



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

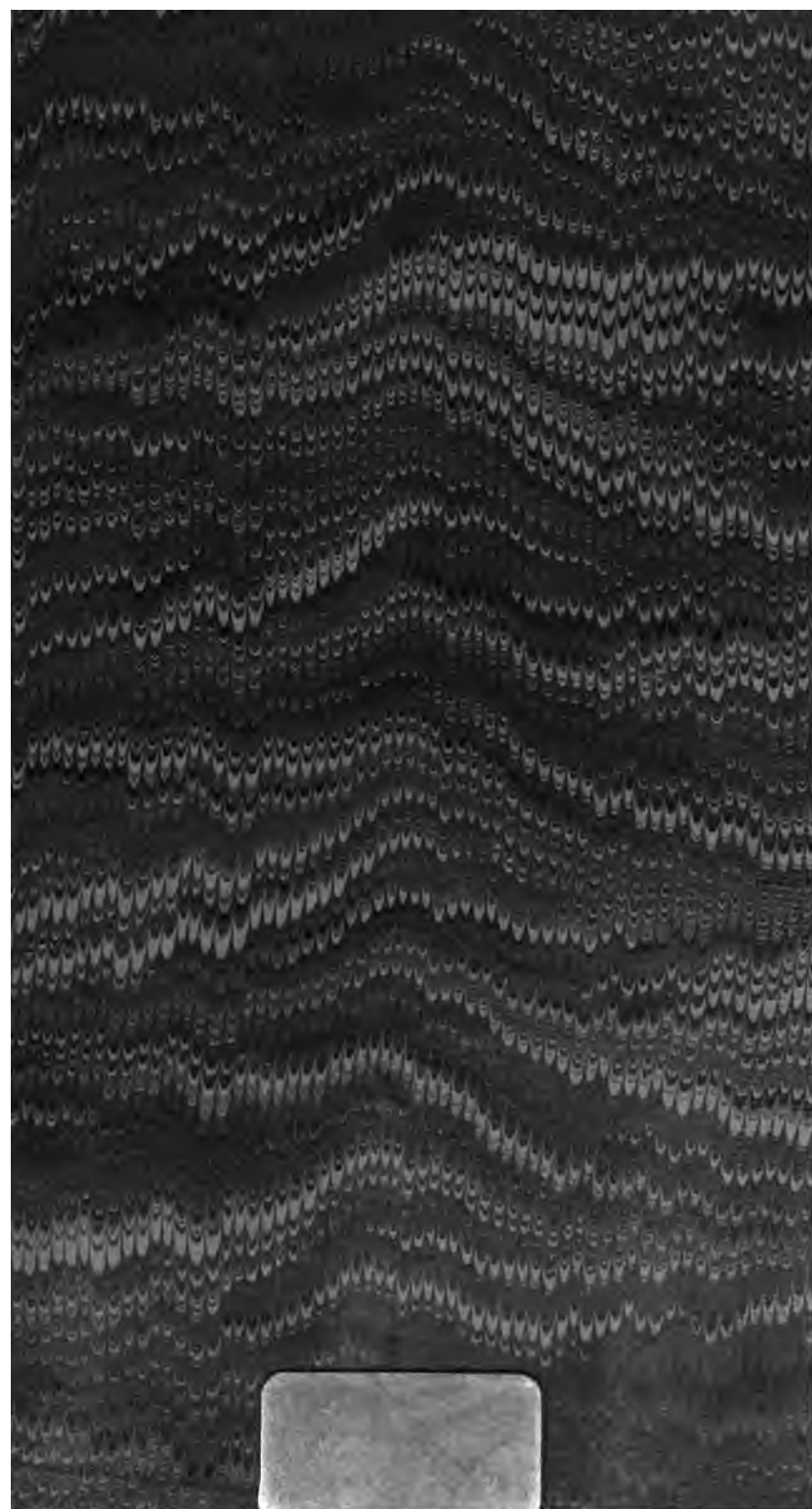
We also ask that you:

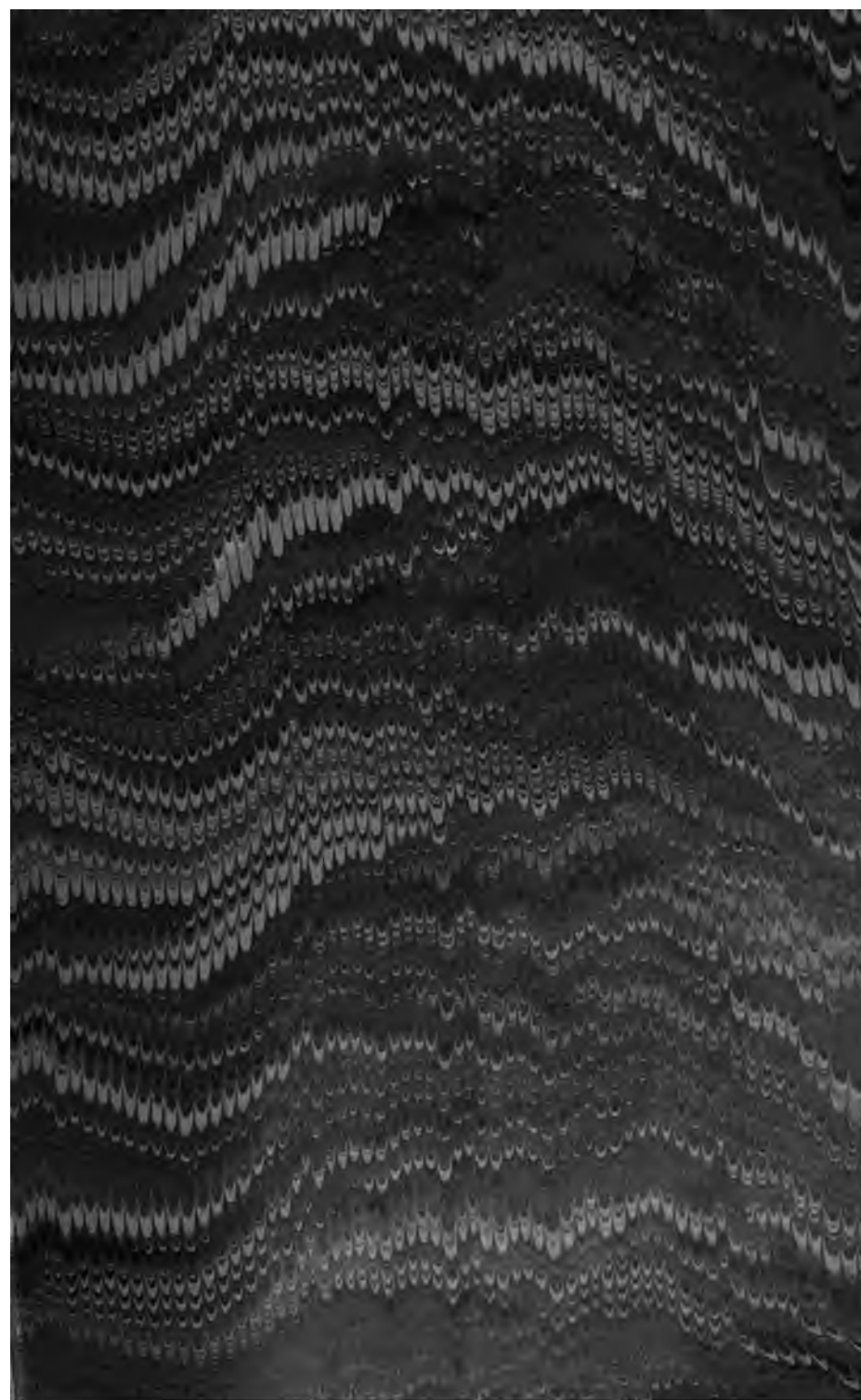
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>









600080508R

1

1



Vincent Brooks, lith.

COMPANY AND BATTALION DRILL

ILLUSTRATED:

IN ACCORDANCE WITH

“The Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry.”

BY

CAPTAIN WILLIAM D. MALTON,

DUMFRIES, ROXBURGH, AND SELKIRKSHIRE MILITIA.

FOURTH EDITION.

LONDON:

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY

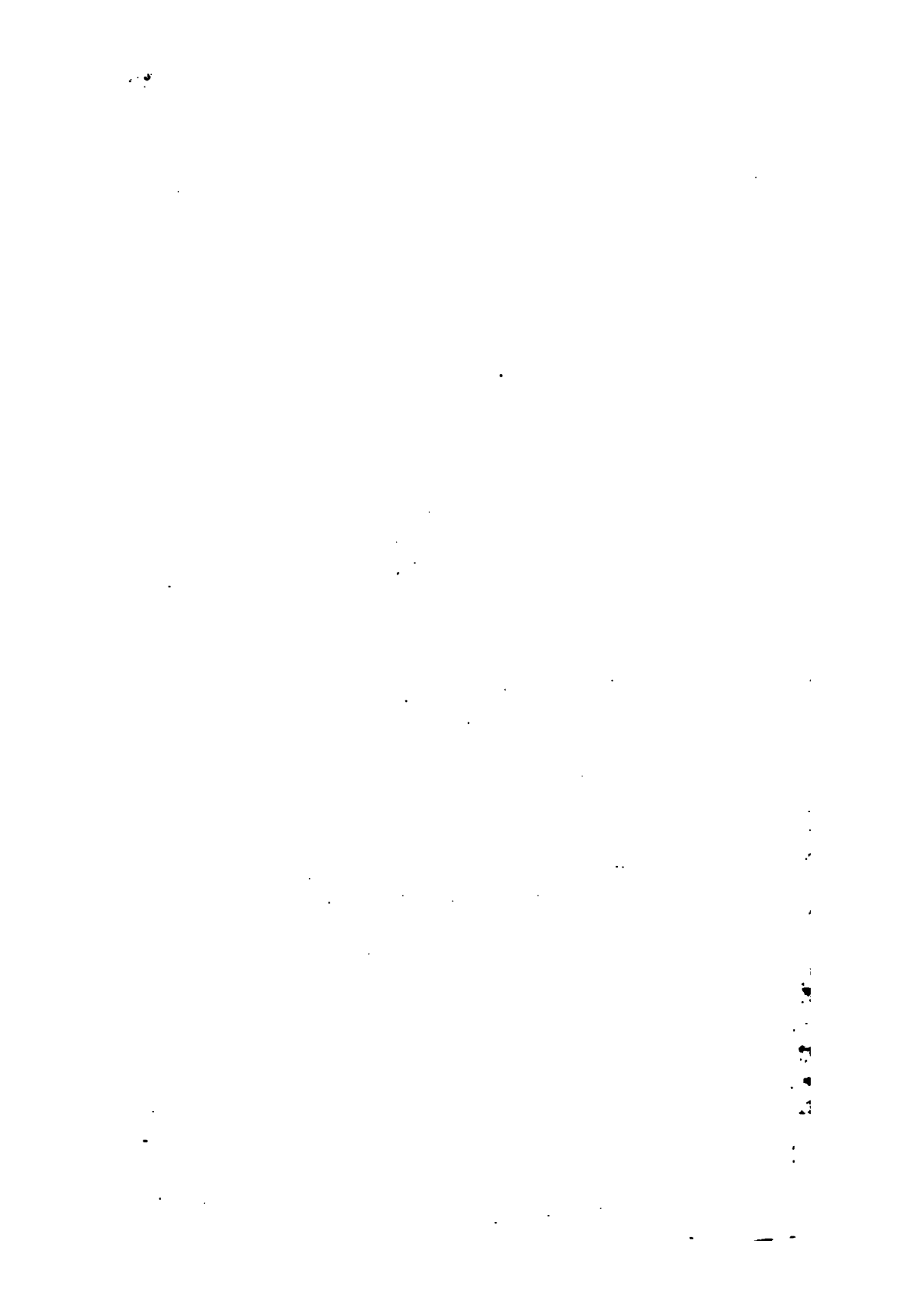
W. CLOWES AND SONS, 14, CHARING CROSS.

1860.

231, A. 42.



600080508R



PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION.

THE present Edition of *Company and Battalion Drill Illustrated* has been subjected to a revision no less rigorous than that bestowed on the last.

Several of the Sections have been enlarged; a few, rewritten: and such alterations made in some minor details as will (it is hoped), while improving the appearance of the book, tend to the convenience of the Reader.

October 1860.

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THE following arrangement of Company and Battalion Drill originated in a collection of Notes made by the Author, for his own use, while attached for some months to the Rifle Brigade. It has subsequently been completed, and circumstances have led to its being now offered to the Service.

The Illustrations are designed to shew Officers their own places, and those of the Covering-serjeants, in any Manœuvre at its different stages: and, at the same time, to familiarize the eye with the progressive changes which take place in the appearance of the Battalion as each *Caution* and *Command* is given.

It is scarcely to be hoped that a work which enters so minutely into details will be found wholly free from defects; great care, however, has been taken as well to insure accuracy, as to avoid laying down anything which, though supported by authority, is contrary to usage.

The Author desires to acknowledge the assistance he derived from Colonel Sir T. Troubridge's tabular arrangement of Battalion Drill, in framing the directions for the Colours, and in classifying the movements in Part II.

December 1857.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THE issue of a revised *Field Exercise* having rendered it indispensable that this work should be entirely re-written, advantage has been taken of the opportunity, to make such improvements in the book as are due to the very favourable reception with which it has been honoured.

The work has been carefully adapted to the new system of Drill, and considerably enlarged; and the Author now submits it, with some degree of confidence, to the criticism which in his case has proved so indulgent.

May 1859.

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

SINCE the publication of the last Edition of this work, the Author's attention has been steadily directed to the improvement of the present.

The few errors, chiefly typographical, which—in spite of every precaution—had crept in, have been corrected: the changes made in the new *Field Exercise* up to the present time have been duly noticed: and additional matter, amounting in the whole to several pages, has been incorporated with the text.

The Author trusts that the book, as now revised, will not be consulted in vain on any point arising out of the subject of which it treats.

March 1860.



CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTORY OBSERVATIONS—

PAGE

<i>Degrees of March.—Taking distance for Files.—Meaning of the terms “pivot”, “inner”, and “outer” flank.—How Officers’ Swords are carried, &c.—Words of Command.—Wheeling the Quarter circle, &c.—General Rules</i>	1—6
--	-----

PART I.—COMPANY DRILL.

(A.) Formation of the Company - - - -	7
(B.) Posting of Officers - - - -	8
(C.) Rule for changing Flanks - - - -	10
(D.) Dressing - - - -	ib.

No. I. Formation of the Parade, and how to Inspect and Prove a Company - - - -	11
II. When a Company as in Line takes Open order, and resumes Close order - - - -	15
III. Marching to the Front and Rear - - - -	17
IV. When a Company as in Column (Right in front) marching in Slow time, takes Open order, and resumes Close order - - - -	19
V. A Company as in Column wheeling into Line - -	21
VI. A Company as in Line wheeling into Column - -	23
VII. A Company as in Line or Column wheeling any given number of Paces on either Flank, from the Halt -	26
VIII. A Company as in Line or Column wheeling on the Centre, from the Halt - - - -	28
IX. Wheeling forward by Subdivisions (or Sections) from Line - - - -	30
X. An Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) wheeling into Line - - - -	33
XI. The Echelon March of Subdivisions (or Sections) -	35
XII. A Company in Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) forming to the Reverse Flank - - - -	37
XIII. File Marching, and the Flank March in Fours - -	39
XIV. The Side (or Closing) Step - - - -	43

	PAGE
XV. Countermarching by Ranks and Files - - -	45
XVI. A Company diminishing Front by forming Subdivisions : and Subdivisions forming Sections -	47
XVII. Sections increasing Front by forming Subdivisions : and Subdivisions forming Company - - -	49
XVIII. Diminishing and increasing Front, by breaking off Files and bringing them again to the Front -	52
XIX. Diminishing and increasing Front, by breaking into Files (or Fours) and re-forming Sections, Subdivisions, or Company - - - -	54
XX. Forming Close Column of Sections, and Company Square - - - - -	55
XXI. Forming Rallying Square - - - - -	57

PART II.—BATTALION DRILL.

(A.) Formation of a Battalion on Parade - -	59
(B.) Posting of Officers and Colours - - -	60
(C.) Rule for changing Flanks - - - -	63
(D.) Dressing - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
(E.) Closing to correct Distances - - -	<i>ib.</i>
(F.) Firings - - - - -	64
(G.) Alignment and Points of Formation - -	65
THE COLOURS - - - - -	67

SEC. I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. I. A Battalion in Line taking Open order, and resuming Close order - - - - -	68
II. Advancing and Retiring in Line - - - -	70
III. Dressing a Battalion in Line - - - - -	72
IV. Advancing and Retiring by Wings - - - -	74
V(1). When a Battalion advancing in Line passes Obstacles	77
V(2). When a Battalion retiring in Line passes Obstacles, or marches through a Relieving Line - - -	80

SEC. II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

§ <i>Of Columns</i> - - - - -	82
VI. A Line wheeling into Open Column - - -	85
VII. A Battalion moving in Open Column from either Flank along the Rear - - - - -	88
VIII. A Battalion formed in Line advancing from a Flank in Open Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) - - - - -	90

CONTENTS.

xi

	PAGE
IX. A Battalion formed in Line advancing from the Centre in Double Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) - - - - -	93
X. A Battalion formed in Line retreating from a Flank in Open Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) - - - - -	97
XI. A Battalion formed in Line retreating from both Flanks in rear of the Centre, in Double Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) - - -	100
XII. A Battalion in Line forming Open, Close, or Quarter-distance Column on any named Company - - -	104

SEC. III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

XIII. Forming Close or Quarter-distance Column from any more open Column - - - - -	110
XIV. A Close or Quarter-distance Column opening from the Front, the Rear, or any named Company - - -	112
XV. A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, wheeling on a fixed or moveable pivot - - - - -	115
XVI. A Close or Quarter-distance Column countermarching by the wheel of Subdivisions round the Centre -	119
XVII ⁽¹⁾ . Changing the Order of a Column by the successive march of the rear Companies to the Front - - -	121
XVII ⁽²⁾ . Changing the Order of an Open, Half, or Quarter-distance Column on a Road - - - - -	123
XVIII. A Column taking ground to a Flank in Fours : in Subdivisions (or Sections) : or by Echellon of Sections -	125

SEC. IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

XIX. Wheeling into Line from Open Column - - -	128
XX. Forming Line to the Front from Open Column on any named Company - - - - -	130
XXI. A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Reverse Flank - - - - -	136
XXII ⁽¹⁾ . A Battalion in Double Column, on the March, forming Line to the Front - - - - -	138
XXII ⁽²⁾ . A Battalion in Double Column forming Line to the Right or Left - - - - -	141

SEC. V.—DEPLOYMENTS.

XXIII. A Battalion in Close or Quarter-distance Column Deploying into Line on any named Company -	143
XXIV. A Battalion in Line changing Front by the intermediate formation of Open Column on any named Company - - - - -	149

SEC. VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

	PAGE
§ <i>Of Echelon</i> - - - - -	153
XXV. A Battalion wheeling forward into Echelon - -	155
XXVI. A Battalion in Oblique Echelon of Companies re-forming Line - - - - -	158
XXVII. A Battalion in Line changing Front by Echelon -	161
XXVIII. A Battalion in Line advancing or retiring in Direct Echelon of Companies from either Flank - -	165
XXIX. Re-forming Line from Direct Echelon - - -	167

SEC. VII.—SQUARES.

XXX. A Battalion in Open or Quarter-distance Column forming Square on any named Company - - -	170
XXXI. A Battalion in Square re-forming Column, or Double Column - - - - -	175
XXXII. A Battalion in Line forming Square on any named Company: and re-forming Line - - - -	177
XXXIII. A Battalion in Line or Echelon forming Company Squares: and re-forming Line or Echelon - -	180
XXXIV. A Close Column forming Square: and the Square being re-formed into Column - - - -	182
XXXV. A Battalion in Line forming Square Two-deep: and re-forming Line - - - - -	183

SEC. VIII.—INSPECTION OR REVIEW.

XXXVI. Inspection or Review of a Battalion - - -	187
XXXVII. Review of two (or more) Battalions formed in contiguous Columns - - - - -	194

DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS IN BATTALION - -	197—220
---	---------

APPENDIX I. - - - - -	221
-----------------------	-----

Words of Command for—

(1) The <i>Manual</i> and <i>Platoon</i> , Firings, &c. - -	221
(2) The Bayonet Exercise - - - - -	225
(3) Sending out an Advanced and Rear Guard -	226
(4) Relieving Guard - - - - -	228
(5) A Funeral Party - - - - -	229

CONTENTS.

xiii

	PAGE
APPENDIX II. - - - - -	231
Weight, &c., of Arms and Ammunition.	
APPENDIX III. - - - - -	232
Table for numbering off a Company.	

† The *cautionary* and *executive* words of command (given by the Drill Instructor in Part I., and by the Battalion Commander in Part II.) are distinguished as follows:—

Cautions are printed thus: LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.

Commands „ thus: Q. MARCH.

The Majors' words are printed thus: STEADY. .

The reference F.E. is to the last corrected Edition of the “Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. 1859.”

LIST OF PLATES.

PART I.

PLATE	PAGE
1 <i>Frontispiece</i> - - - - -	Title
2 Key to the Illustrations - - - - -	1
3 Posting of Officers, &c., in Column - - - - -	7
4 A Company as in Line, and as in Column, taking Open order - - - - -	15
5 A Company wheeling on its centre - - - - -	28
6 A Company in Column of Sections forming to the Reverse flank - - - - -	37
7 Formation of Fours - - - - -	39
8 File Marching - - - - -	40
9 Countermarching by Ranks - - - - -	45
10 „ by Files - - - - -	46
11 A Company as in Column forming Subdivisions - - - - -	47
12 An Open Column of Sections forming Subdivisions - - - - -	49
13 Forming Close Column of Sections - - - - -	55

PART II.

PLATE		PAGE
14	A Battalion formed in Line at Open order - - - -	68
15	Dressing a Battalion in Line - - - -	72
16	A Battalion in Line passing Obstacles, by the Companies breaking into Fours - - - -	77
17	A Line wheeling into Open Column - - - -	85
18	A Battalion moving in Open Column from the Right along the rear - - - -	88
19	A Battalion moving off in Open Column from the Right -	90
20	A Battalion in Line advancing by Double Column of Sub- divisions from the centre - - - -	95
21	A Battalion in Line retiring from both flanks in rear of the centre - - - -	101
22	A Battalion in Line forming Column in rear of the right- flank Company - - - -	105
23	A Battalion in Line forming Column (Right in front) on the left-centre Company - - - -	107
24	A Battalion in Line forming Column (Right in front) facing to the Rear - - - -	108
25	A Quarter-distance Column wheeling on a fixed pivot -	115
26	An Open Column moving into an alignment by the flank march of Fours - - - -	117
27	A Quarter-distance Column countermarching by the wheel of Subdivisions round the centre - - - -	119
28	A Column bringing its rear Company to the Front - -	121
29	The same, on a Road - - - -	123
30	A Column taking ground to a flank by Fours - - -	125
31	A Column taking ground to a flank by the Echelon march of Sections - - - -	127
32	An Open Column wheeling into Line - - - -	128
33	An Open Column forming Line, from the Halt, on its front Company - - - -	131
34	An Open Column forming Line to the Reverse flank, at an angle less than a right angle - - - -	137
35	A Double Column of Subdivisions, on the march, forming Line to the Front - - - -	138
36	The same, forming Line to a flank - - - -	141
37	A Battalion in Column Deploying on the leading Company	143
38	A Battalion in Column Deploying on a central Company -	147
39	Changing front by Open Column on the right-flank Company (Left thrown <i>forward</i>), at right angles to the old Line -	149
40	Changing front by Open Column to the Right on a central Company, obliquely to the old Line - - - -	151

LIST OF PLATES.

XV

PLATE	PAGE
41 When the <i>flank</i> Company of formation is wheeled into Line as soon as the alignment is taken up: the remainder forming on their Coverers - - - - -	152
42 When the <i>central</i> Company of formation is wheeled into Line as soon as the alignment is taken up: the remainder forming on their Coverers - - - - -	<i>ib.</i>
43 A Battalion wheeling forward into Echellon - - - - -	155
44 A Battalion in Line changing front by Echellon to the Right on the right-flank Company, obliquely to the old Line - - - - -	161
45 A Battalion in Line changing front by Echellon to the Left on the right-flank Company, at right angles to the old Line - - - - -	162
46 A Battalion in Line changing front by Echellon to the Right on a central Company, obliquely to the old Line - - - - -	163
47 A Battalion in Line advancing in Direct Echellon of Companies from the Left - - - - -	165
48 A Direct Echellon re-forming Line at right angles to the original alignment - - - - -	168
49 A Direct Echellon forming Line oblique to the original Line - - - - -	169
50 A Battalion in Quarter-distance Column forming Square on the leading Company - - - - -	170
51 An Open Column taking ground to a flank, forming Square on the centre - - - - -	172
52 A Square formed (from Double Column of Subdivisions) on the 2 centre Subdivisions, re-forming Double Column - - - - -	176
53 A Battalion of 8 Companies forming Square from Line on the left-centre Company - - - - -	177
54 A Battalion in Line forming Square Two-deep - - - - -	183
55 A Column marching past in Slow time - - - - -	188
56, 57 The Officers' Salute in marching past in Slow time - - - - -	189

APPENDIX.

58 The Bayonet Exercise - - - - -	225
59 An Advanced and Rear Guard on a Road - - - - -	226
60 Quick Step - - - - -	232

. The symbols used in the Plates to indicate Captains, Subalterns, and Covering-serjeants (*see* next page), are intended to be looked at as though placed *vertically* on the paper. They are therefore, as regards front and direction, placed the reverse way to those in the *Field Exercise*.

ERRATA.

Page 41, last line. For 'rear rank' read 'present rear rank'.

„ 42, line 23. For 'FOURS DEEP' read 'FORM FOUR-DEEP.'

KEY TO THE ILLUSTRATIONS.


IN PARTS 1 & II.

<p>♂ <i>Captain</i></p> <p>♂ <i>Covering Serjeant</i></p> <p>♂ <i>Senior Supernumerary Serjeant.</i></p>		<p>♂ <i>Lieutenant</i></p> <p>♂ <i>Ensign</i></p>
--	--	---


← *shews Direction and Motion.*

← → → → → " *Direction without Motion.*

IN PART I.

 represents a *File*: the front rank man being shaded, and the dark line shewing the front.

IN PART II.

 represents a *Company*: the Right Subdivision being shaded, and the dark line shewing the present front.

□ □ □ □ □ □ □ □ signifies a *Company* in *Fours*.

♫ " *the Queen's Colour.*

P " *the Regimental Colour.*

♫ " *a Battalion aide.*

..... " *the Alignment taken up by the aides.*

The Reader, as he looks at the Plates, is supposed to be facing the Battalion as originally formed in Line.

When the movement is towards him (as in the Advance by Double Column from the Centre) the 1st. Stage of it is placed at the top of the page: when the movement is from him (as in Retiring from both flanks in rear of the Centre) it commences at the bottom of the page.

In a formation by Subdivisions or Sections, spaces are left
between them, in order to show more distinctly their relative positions.

INTRODUCTORY OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *Degrees of March.*

In *Slow* or *Quick* time the length of a pace is 30 inches: except in "stepping out," when it is 33 inches, and in "stepping short," when it is 10 inches.

In *Double* time, in which there is neither 'stepping out' nor 'stepping short', the length of a pace is 36 inches.

[In *Wheeling* (forward or backward): the outer man, only, of the Company takes a full pace; each of the other men shortening his pace in proportion to his distance from the standing flank.]

The length of the *Side-step*, which is always taken in *Quick* time, is 10 inches: except when taken to clear or cover another man (as in forming four-deep), in which case it will be 21 inches.

In <i>Slow</i> time	75 steps	(= 62 yds. 18 in.)	} are taken in a minute.†
In <i>Quick</i> time	108 "	(= 90 yards)	
In <i>Double</i> time	150 "	(= 150 yards)	

The command for "marking time" from the *Halt* is *Mark-time: Quick* (or *Slow*).

(F. E. I., pp. 12, 13.)

(2) *To calculate Distance for any given number of Files.*

Since each file has a front of 21 inches (*see* p. 7), and the length of a pace is 30 inches, it follows that the number of paces required for the front of a Company will be *about* two-thirds of the number of files composing it. The following Rule will give the exact distance required.

Multiply the number of files by 7, and divide the result by 10: the quotient will give the paces, and the remainder (if any) multiplied by 3 will give the inches over.

† A regular cadence in Marching was first introduced by Count (afterwards Marshal) SAXE, in 1722.

Thus: suppose 22 files—

$$22 \times 7 = 154.$$

$$154 \div 10 = 15 \text{ (paces) } 4 \text{ remainder.}$$

$$4 \times 3 = 12 \text{ (inches).}$$

Distance required = 15 paces, 12 inches.

In practice it will be found sufficient to multiply by 7, and cut off the right-hand figure of the result; disregarding any odd inches.

(3) *Meaning of the terms "Pivot," "Inner," and "Outer" flank.*

The *pivot* flank in all single Columns is that flank which when wheeled up to, preserves the several parts of a Company or Line in their natural order, and to their proper front. Thus: in a Column of Companies *Right in front* (i.e. with that Company leading which, when in Line, stands on the right), the front-rank *left-hand* men of Companies are the pivots on which if a wheel into Line were made, the Line would stand in its proper order. Similarly: in a Column *Left in front* (i.e. with that Company leading which, when in Line, stands on the left), the front-rank *right-hand* men of Companies are the pivots.

Hence the expression "Right in front: Left the pivot," and *vice versa*.

The flank opposite to the pivot is termed the *Reverse* flank.

[The above explanation equally applies to a single Column of Subdivisions or Sections.]

Companies (or their parts) in single Column, at whatever distance the Column may be formed, cover and dress to the pivot flank. See p. 82.

The 'Inner' flank of a Company:—In Line, that flank which is nearest to the point of *appui* (p. 66.): in Oblique Echellon, the flank on which the wheel into echellon is made (p. 155.): in Direct Echellon, the flank next to the preceding Company (p. 165.). The opposite is called the 'Outer' flank.

(4) *How Officers' Swords are carried, &c.*

On all occasions when the men are under Arms, Officers' swords are drawn without any word of command.

When the men are at *Attention, swords are held perpendicularly; the back of the blade resting against the shoulder, and the guard of the hilt (except in Marching past) resting on the inside of the fingers.

When the men are standing at *Ease, Officers lower the point of the sword between the feet, the edge to the right: both hands rest on the top of the hilt, the left hand covering the right.

N.B.—In Marching past (pp. 17, 188): swords will be grasped by the handle, and held steadily against the shoulder. (G. O. 1834.)

In Route Marching: swords are sheathed at the word *MARCH AT EASE*, and again drawn at the word *ATTENTION*.

For the Officers' Salute in Line, *see* page 187: for the Salute in marching past in Slow time, *see Illustrations* page 189.

(5) *Words of Command.*

Every command must be distinctly pronounced as written: and however small the body of men to which it may be given, should be delivered at the full extent of the voice.

Cautions, or *cautionary parts* of a command, must be given slowly: the last (or executive) part of a command, or the last word of a *caution* given as a signal for any preparatory movement [*e.g.* for pivot men to face], will be given quickly and sharply.

Examples.—"To the Right: Half:—*Face!*"

"On the Right: backwards:—*Wheel!* Quick—*March!*"

Every command consisting of one word must be preceded by a *caution*: thus "Company [or, in Battalion, "No.—"] :—*Halt!*"

N.B.—When the men are in motion, the executive part of a command must be given as they commence the pace which will bring them to the spot where the command has to be executed: the *caution* therefore (each word of which should, if time permits, correspond with a pace) will be commenced accordingly.

* Except at Open order in Line: *see* Note, p. 16.

Before calling men to *Attention* when they are standing easy, the caution *Eyes front* must be given.

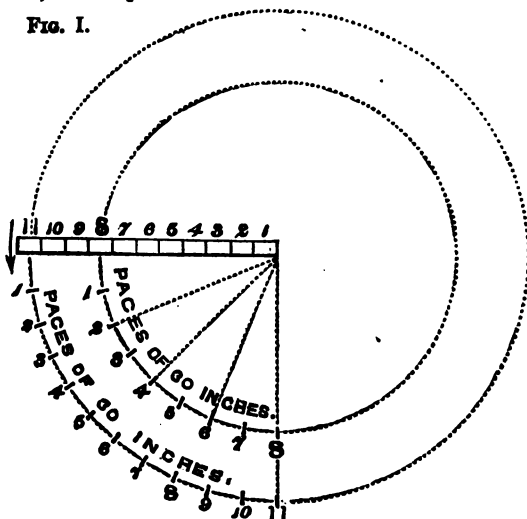
(F. E. L., pp. 3, 54.)

(6) *Wheeling the Quarter circle, &c.*

When a Company wheels on either of its flank men, it is considered as the *radius of a circle of which such pivot man is the centre. The front of the Company, therefore, will equal one-sixth of the line of the circumference; and, conversely, the circumference will contain 6 times as many paces as are contained in the front of the Company.

It follows, then, that if a Company, say of 21 files (for the front of which 14 paces are required) were to wheel a complete circle, the number of paces contained in the circumference of such circle would be 14×6 , i.e. 84 paces: that if the Company were to wheel a half circle, the paces contained in the arc of the half circle would be $\frac{1}{2}$ of 84, i.e. 42 paces: that if it wheeled a quarter circle, the number of paces in the arc of the quarter circle would be $\frac{1}{4}$ of 84, i.e. 21 paces.

FIG. I.



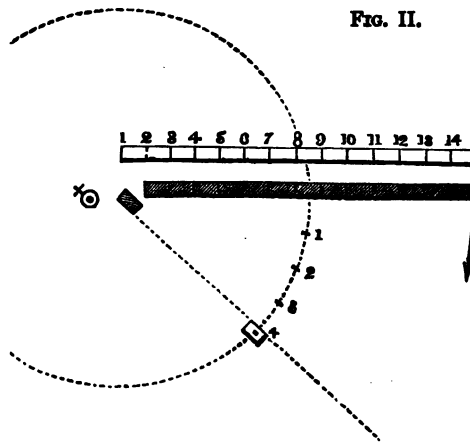
* The circumference of a circle (i.e. the line which bounds it) is supposed to be divided into 360 degrees (°): any part of the circumference is termed an *arc*. The *radius* of a circle is a right line drawn from the centre to any point in the circumference: and equals about one-sixth of the line of the circumference.

Hence the conclusion, that *the number of paces taken by the outer man of a Company wheeling the Quarter circle, is equal to the number of files of which the Company is composed.* (Fig. I.)

If a Company, then, wheels as many paces as it has files, it will complete the quarter circle: if it wheels half that number of paces, it will complete the one-eighth of a circle: if a quarter of that number, one-sixteenth of a circle.

The practical rule for the formation of an Oblique Echelon (*see* Part II., No. XXV.,) depends on the principle above stated. For, it is obvious from what has been said, that if from *any* given file of a Company, a number of paces equal to that file's number from the pivot flank be taken, to front (or rear), along the circumference of the circle of which the pivot man is the centre, and if the Company be then wheeled up (or back) to the person who has taken the paces, a Quarter circle will be wheeled. It is equally plain, that if it be required to wheel one-eighth of a circle only, *half* the number of paces must, in that case, be taken : *e.g.* in measuring from the 8th file from the pivot, 4 paces : in measuring from the 12th file, 6 paces ; and so on. (Fig. II.)

FIG. II.



The practice is to measure invariably from the 8th file, simply because it is the most convenient for the purpose: 2 paces from that file making one-sixteenth, 4 paces one-eighth, 6 paces three-sixteenths, 8 paces one-fourth, of a circle.

N.B.—The cautionary word **WHEEL** given to men at the **Halt** will always imply a *quarter-circle* wheel; unless preceded by the words '**PACES**' (*see* p. 26.), or '**ON THE MOVE**' (*see* p. 24).

The following *General Rules* are equally applicable to a Company formed singly, or with the Battalion:—

I. On all occasions when a Company, Subdivision, or Section wheels *forward*, the rear-rank man of the pivot file will uncover, by taking a pace to his rear, and then a side-step of 21 inches so as to cover the rear-rank man of the file next him: but when the wheel is made *backwards*—whether the men are faced about to wheel, or not—he will *not* uncover.

[The front-rank man of the pivot file is usually termed "the pivot man."]

(F. E., p. 54.)

II. When the word *Quick*, or *Double*, *March* is given to men standing with carried Arms, they will (except when *wheeling on a standing pivot*, or *taking a named number of paces to the front*) slope—or, if *Riflemen*, will trail—as they step off: during the *Slow*, *Side*, or *Back* step they remain at the 'carry,' unless ordered to slope (or trail).

The men will invariably carry from the 'slope' when they halt.

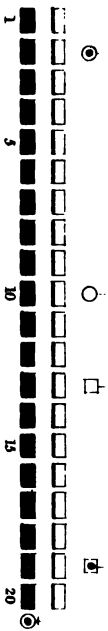
If Arms are at the 'order' when *Slow*, or *Quick*, *March* is given, the men trail: and men marching at the 'trail' when *Halt* is given, order. In turning about: Arms are carried from the 'slope' (or brought to a perpendicular position from the 'trail'), on the first pace; the original position being resumed as the men, on the 4th pace, step off in the new direction. When men standing with ordered Arms, are directed to close, to step back, or to take any named number of paces to the front, they will come to the 'short trail': ordering as they halt.

When men step off at the 'trail', the rear rank will make its first step a short one; regaining its distance, on coming to the *Halt*, by taking a longer pace.

(F. E., p. 87)

POSTING OF OFFICERS, COVER SERJ, AND SENIOR SUPERNUMY SERJ, IN COLUMN.

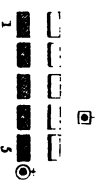
I. In a Company as in Column (Right in front.)



III. In a Company formed in Column of Sections. (Right in front.)



II. In a Company formed in Column of Subdivisions (Right in front.)



W.D.M. det.

PART I.—COMPANY DRILL.

(A.) FORMATION OF THE COMPANY.

A Company falls in in two ranks at Close order, with shouldered (*Riflemen* with ordered) Arms, the files lightly touching: and having been numbered from right to left, will be told off into 2 Subdivisions and 4 Sections. (*See p. 12.*)

The left file of the right Subdivision will (except in wheeling on the centre to the *right*: *see p. 28*) be considered the centre of the Company.

Note—Odd numbers are 'right' files, even numbers 'left' files. Should the file on the left of the Company, however, be an odd number, it will act as a 'left' file: and the left-but-one file—although an even number—will act as a 'right' file. If there is a *blank* file (*i.e.* a file without a rear-rank man), it must be the 3rd file from the left of the Company.

Each man, as he stands in the ranks, will occupy an average space of 21 inches. When at *Attention*, the unoccupied hand will be turned flat to the thigh, with the thumb close to the fore-finger and at the trowser's seam: the knees will be straight, heels closed, feet at an angle of 60°.

[A Company is sized from flanks to centre, as follows—

The men are first formed in a single rank; the tallest on the flanks, the shortest in the centre. They are then numbered off, and each Subdivision is formed two-deep: the left files of the Right Subdivision forming in rear, those of the Left Subdivision in front, of the right files. The left-hand man of the Company, if a right file, will also take a pace to the front. The whole are then closed and dressed on the right flank file.]

(F. E., pp. 25, 42, 48.)

At Close order the rear rank is distant one pace, at Open order three paces, from the front rank : the paces being measured from the heels of the one rank to the heels of the other.

Exception.—When a Company in Column takes Open order on the march, the rear rank marks time only one pace ; and will, consequently, when at Open order, be *two* paces from the front rank. See page 19.

N.B.—When a Company falls in singly, it will be formed as a Company in Line: but will be drilled as though it were with the Battalion. The *Caution* given previously to each movement will state the supposed formation of the Battalion, thus: AS A COMPANY IN LINE, or AS A COMPANY IN COLUMN: RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT: and the Officers and Covering-serjeant, if not already in their places, will take post accordingly.

(F. E., p. 51.)

(B.) POSTING OF OFFICERS AND COVERING-SERJEANT.

(1) *In a Company in Line at Close Order—*

The *Captain* is on the right of the front rank. The Subalterns are in the supernumerary rank, three paces from the rear rank : the *Lieutenant* posted in rear of the 2nd file from the left, the *Ensign* in rear of the centre, of the Company.

The *Covering-serjeant* is on the right of the rear rank.

(F. E., p. 55.)

In Line, the supernumerary rank always retains its distance of 3 paces from the rear rank, with which it will therefore step backward, or forward, on all occasions: the principal duty of the Officers and non-commissioned officers composing it, is to keep the other ranks closed up during the attack, and to correct any mistake that may occur while manœuvring.

(2) *In a Company in Column—*

The *Captain* is on the pivot flank of the front rank. The Subalterns are in the supernumerary rank, one pace from the rear rank : the *Lieutenant* posted in rear of the 2nd file from

the reverse flank, the *Ensign* (as in Line) in rear of the centre, of the Company.

The *Covering-serjeant* is one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank.

(F. E., p. 57.)

For an explanation of the pivot flank in Column see (3) page 2.

(3) *In a Company formed in Column of Subdivisions—*

The *Captain* is on the pivot flank of the front Subdivision. The *Lieutenant* is on the pivot flank of the rear Subdivision: the *Ensign* one pace in rear of the 2nd file from its reverse flank.

The *Covering-serjeant* is one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank of the front Subdivision.

(4) *In a Company formed in Column of Sections—*

The *Captain* is on the pivot flank of the leading Section: the *Lieutenant* on the pivot flank of the 3rd Section: the *Ensign* on the pivot flank of the 4th Section. [The 2nd Section is led by the senior supernumerary Serjeant.]

The *Covering-serjeant*, except in the absence of a leader for the 2nd Section, is one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank of the leading Section.

(F. E., p. 66.)

(5) *In File-marching, and the flank march by Fours—*

The *Captain* is placed next to the front-rank man of the leading file, or four, of his Company. The *Lieutenant* marches on the reverse flank of the 2nd file, or four, from the rear: the *Ensign* retains his position in rear of the centre, simply facing (or turning) with the Company.

The *Covering-serjeant* leads the front rank.

(F. E., p. 75.)

He then gives—

Examine : Arms.

Rod.

Home.

and passes along each rank, as before, inspecting the heads of the ramrods.

As he finishes the inspection of each rank, he will give—

— *rank : Return.*

He then passes along both ranks, to see that the men are properly dressed and shaved, &c., and their accoutrements cleaned : and having finished the inspection, gives—

Unfix : Bayonets.

Rear rank take Close order.—March.

Stand at : Ease.

The Drill Instructor having, if the Company is singly formed, given the word *TELL OFF AS A RIGHT (or LEFT) COMPANY*, the *Captain* (or one of his Subalterns) will proceed to tell off and prove the Company : thus—

Company : Attention.

Number off.

The number of files being ascertained, the Officer who is proving the Company will immediately divide it into 2 Subdivisions and 4 Sections, thus :—

(Supposing there are 24 files)

No. 12 : left of the Right Subdivision.

No. 13 : right of the Left.

Nos. 6, 12, 18, 24 : left of Sections.

Note.—Should there be an uneven number of files in the Company, one Subdivision must, of course, be stronger than the other. When this is the case in a *Right Company* (i.e. one whose number, as it stands in the Battalion, is odd), the

odd file will be included in the Right Subdivision: in a *Left Company* (i.e. one whose number in the Battalion is even), the odd file will be in the Left Subdivision. When the 2 Sections of *either* Subdivision are unequal, the stronger of the two will be that on the outer flank.

(F. E., p. 49.)

Thus—in a *Right Company* consisting of 27 files, No. 14 will be the left-hand man of the Right Subdivision, and Nos. 7, 14, 20, 27 left of Sections: in a *Left Company* of 27 files, No. 13 will be the left-hand man of the Right Subdivision, and Nos. 7, 13, 20, 27 left of Sections. (See APPENDIX III.)

The Company having been told off as above, the Officer will proceed to prove it: thus—

Shoulder: Arms.

Mark time: Quick.

(When in echelon)

Subdivisions: Right wheel. Mark Time. — Re-form Company.

Subdivisions: Left wheel. ditto. ditto.

Sections: Right wheel. ditto. ditto.

Sections: Left wheel. ditto. ditto.

[The Company will then be turned to the *Right-about*, and proved in like manner, rear rank in front.]

Halt: front.

Fours: deep. ——— Front.

Fours: right. ——— ditto.

Fours: left. ——— ditto.

Fours: about. ——— ditto.

Mark time: Quick.

Right-about: turn.

Fours: right. ——— Rear: turn.

Fours: left. ——— Rear: turn.

Halt: front.

* *Form Close Column of Sections.—Quick: March.*

Re-form: Company.—Quick: March.

* See pp. 55, 56.

** As the right-centre Company in a Quarter-distance Column—
On the leading Company : Form Square.—Quick : March.
Sections : outwards.
Re-form : Column.—Quick : March.—Halt : dress.*

*Right Sections (1st and 3rd)—Order : Arms.
Left Sections (2nd and 4th)—Order : Arms.
Right Subdivision — Stand at : Ease.
Left Subdivision — Stand at : Ease.*

If the Company is to be put through the *Manual* and *Platoon*, the Officer will give—

*Company : Attention.
Shoulder : Arms.
Rear rank take Open order.—March.*

and will then proceed with the †*Manual* as ordered : one pause of slow time being allowed between each motion.

Before proceeding with the †*Platoon*, which may be done either in slow or quick time, the Officer will give—

Rear rank take Close order.—March.

* Or as any other side-face Company in a Column. (See PART II., No. XXX.)

† For words of command for the *Manual* and *Platoon*, see pp. 221, 222.

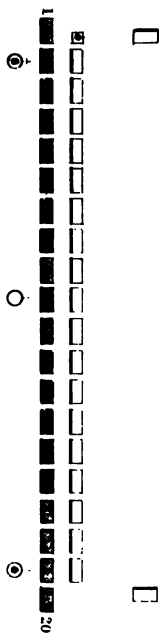
PART I. COMPANY DRILL, No 1 & 2.

A Company as in Line taking Open order from the Hall. (A)
as in Column " " " on the March. (B)

15.

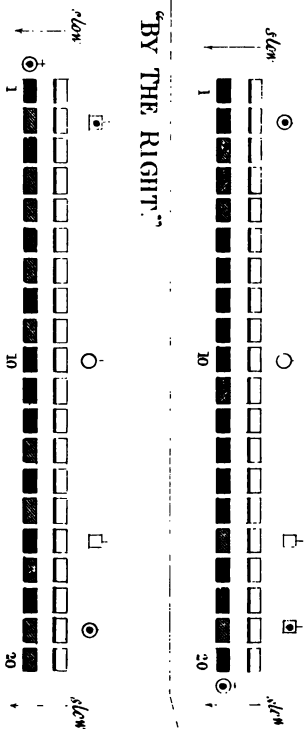
I. "REAR RANK TAKE OPEN ORDER."

(A)



I. The Company as in Column. Right in front.

(B)

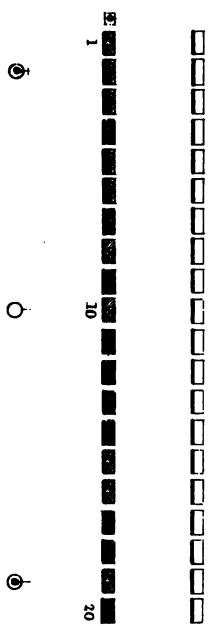


II. "BY THE RIGHT"

II. "MARCH" "Steady" "Eyes front."



III. "Rear rank take Open order."



W.L.M. del.

Thomson Remond.

No. II.—*When a Company as in Line takes Open Order, and resumes Close Order.*

(F. E. II., Sec. 1, p. 55.)

AS A COMPANY
IN LINE.

REAR RANK TAKE
OPEN ORDER.

MARCH.

Officers and Covering-serjeant : as in *Line*. (p. 8.)

(A) *Taking Open order.*

[On the word ORDER—The flank men of the rear rank step back 2 paces, and face to their right : when the rear rank has stepped back—they front, and raise the right arm* till *Eyes front* is given.]

(1) *On the word ORDER—*

The Officers recover swords. The *Captain* moves out and places himself one pace in front of the 2nd file from the right of the Company : the *Lieutenant* and *Ensign* (both passing round the left flank) place themselves one pace from the front rank, in front of the same files they respectively cover when in rear.

The *Covering-serjeant* takes a side-step of 21 inches to his left, into the place vacated by the right-hand man of the rear rank.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Officers take 2 paces to their front. The *Lieutenant* and *Ensign* then look to their right ; and the *Captain*, glancing to his left, will dress them, and then give the word *Steady*.

The *Covering-serjeant* takes a side-pace to the right, and then a pace to the front into the place vacated by the *Captain*.

* In the directions given for pivot men, it is (of course) to be understood that *Riflemen* will raise the *left* arm.

[The Serjeant on the right of the supernumerary rank will dress the rear and supernumerary ranks, giving *Eyes front* as the dressing of each rank is completed.]

(3) *On the Captain's word 'Steady'—*

The Officers port their swords, and look to their front.

The GENERAL SALUTE (*see* p. 187) may then be practised.

Note.—If, while the ranks are opened as above, the word *STAND AT EASE* is given:—the Officers, on assuming the position of Standing at Ease, will bring their hands together, the left supporting the right; so that the back of the sword may rest on the inside of the left arm. At the word *ATTENTION*, they will bring their swords again to the 'port.'

(B) *Resuming Close order.*

REAR RANK TAKE (1) *On the word ORDER—*
CLOSE ORDER.

MARCH.

The Officers face to the right, bringing their swords to the 'recover' as the right foot is drawn to the rear.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The *Lieutenant* and *Ensign* (both passing round the left flank of the Company) resume their places in the supernumerary rank. The *Captain* will then resume his place on the right of the front rank.

Each Officer on arriving at his place will front (right-about), and carry his sword.

The *Covering-serjeant* takes two paces to his rear and one pace to his left: and when the supernumerary Officers have passed to the rear and the Captain is in his place, takes one pace to the right and one pace to the front into his place in Line.

See the corresponding No. (I.) of PART II.; p. 68.

No. III.—*Marching to the Front and Rear.*

(F. E. II., SEC. 3, p. 58.)

AS A COMPANY
IN —.Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Line* or
Column. (p. 8.)THE LINE
[or COLUMN]
WILL ADVANCE(A) *Advancing.*S. (Q. or D.)
MARCH.(1) *On the word ADVANCE—*

The *Captain* will select some distant object about 150 yards straight to his front, and will then observe some nearer point (such as a stone or tuft of grass) in the same straight line, about 70 yards distant; on which to march.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

All step off: the *Captain*, from time to time as may be necessary, choosing fresh points to march upon; never having fewer than two such points.*

(B) *Retiring.*THE LINE
[or COLUMN]
WILL RETIRE.
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

[When the Company has faced about, the uncovered proper front-rank man (should there be a blank file) steps up in line with the proper rear rank.]

*On the word FACE—*S. (Q. or D.)
MARCH.

The *Captain*, if the Company is as in *Column*, will step up in line with the proper rear rank, and select points to march upon: if as in *Line*, will remain in his place in the proper front rank.

N.B.—After *turning* to the *Right-about*, which is done in 3 paces, a Company moves off at the 4th pace in the new direction: no word *FORWARD* being given.

* These points are termed by the French, *points de vue*.

¶ *The Diagonal March.*

TAKE GROUND
TO THE RIGHT
(or LEFT) BY
THE DIAGONAL
MARCH.

—
RIGHT(or LEFT)
HALF TURN.

When a Company as in Column, marching to the front or rear, is ordered to take ground to a flank by the Diagonal March :—If the half turn is to the pivot flank, the *Captain* will lead the Company : if to the reverse flank, and the *Captain* is not ordered to change his flank, the *Lieutenant* will move up and lead. (*See* page 127.)

[The front-rank man on the leading flank will be the pivot. The other files must be careful not to let the arm which is nearest the leading flank get beyond the centre of the men's backs who precede them in echelon : if they keep this position, in marching to the right their right feet will just clear the left feet of the preceding files ; in marching to the left, *vice versa*.]

(F. E., pp. 31, 75.)

No. IV.—*When a Company as in Column (Right in front) marching in Slow Time, takes Open Order, and resumes Close Order.*

(F. E., II., SEC. 4, p. 58.)

[Open order is taken, on the March, by the rear rank marking time one pace; and Close order is resumed by the rear rank lengthening its pace.]

- *.* Before commencing this movement, the Drill Instructor will place 3 Points: the 1st for taking Open order, the 2nd for the saluting Point, the 3rd for resuming Close order. The rear rank, except while at Open order, will lock up: see Note, p. 191.

AS A COMPANY
IN COLUMN
RIGHT IN FRONT.

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Column Right in front.* (p. 8.)

SLOPE ARMS.

(A) *Taking Open order.*

MARCH PAST IN
SLOW TIME.

(1) *On the word RIGHT—*

SLOW MARCH.

The *Captain, Lieutenant, and Covering-serjeant* change flanks.

BY THE RIGHT.

CARRY ARMS.

(2) *When the Company reaches Point 1—*

The *Captain* will recover his sword, give the word *Rear rank take Open order*, and move out in double time 3 paces in front of the 2nd file from the right: the *Lieutenant* and *Ensign* likewise recovering their swords, and doubling out (round the left flank of the Company) to the same places they respectively occupy when at Open order in Line. Each Officer, on arriving at his place in front of the Company, will take

up the slow time and bring his sword to the 'port.'

The Covering-serjeant will move up into the place vacated by the Captain, and lead the Company: the supernumerary rank will mark time 3 paces.

- (3) When at 12 paces from Point 2, the *Captain* will raise the fingers of his left hand as a signal to his Subalterns: and when at 10 paces, as the left foot comes to the ground, all the Officers will commence the Salute as described at page 189.
- (4) When 6 paces past Point 2, as the left foot comes to the ground, the Officers will bring their swords to the 'recover'; and at the next pace, to the 'port'.

(B) *Resuming Close order.*

When the Company reaches Point 2—

The *Captain* will recover his sword, give the word *Rear rank take Close order*, and (turning to the right) will resume his place on the right of the Company. The *Lieutenant* and *Ensign*, on the word 'order', recover their swords; turn to the left; and (passing, as before, round the left flank) resume their places in rear. Each Officer, on arriving at his post, will carry his sword and take up the step.

The *Covering-serjeant* falls back to the rear of the 2nd file from the right of the Company; and the supernumerary rank closes up to its proper distance.

See the corresponding No. (XXXVI.) of PART II., p. 189.

No. V.—*A Company as in Column wheeling into Line.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 5, 12, pp. 59, 69.)

(A) *From the †Halt.*

AS A COMPANY
IN COLUMN
RIGHT IN FRONT.

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Column Right in front.* (p. 8.)

LEFT WHEEL
INTO LINE.

Q. *MARCH.*

[On the word *LINE*—the pivot man faces to his left (his rear-rank man uncovering), and raises his right arm till *Eyes front* is given by the Captain.]

(1) *On the word LINE—*

The *Captain* moves out, and places himself one pace in front of the 2nd file from the left of the Company, facing to the front.

The *Covering-serjeant* runs out to mark the spot where the right of the Company will rest in *Line*: standing (with shouldered Arms) facing the new front. He will raise his left arm, looking to his left and aligning himself with the pivot man.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The *Captain* turns toward the men, and moves back round the pivot man, to be ready to dress the Company from the left.

During the wheel, the *Lieutenant* moves across to his place in *Line*, and the supernumerary rank gains its distance of 3 paces from the rear rank.

When the wheeling flank of the Company is 2 paces in rear of the Covering-serjeant, the *Captain* gives *Company: halt. Dress:* and having dressed the men, gives *Eyes front*, changes to the right flank, and falls in.

The *Covering-serjeant*, at the word *Eyes front*, falls back into his place on the right of the rear rank.

[A Company as in Column *Left* in front, will get the word **RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE**, and proceed in like manner: the Coverer marking its left flank, and the Captain dressing it from the right.]

(B) *On a † Moveable pivot.*

**LEFT (or
RIGHT) WHEEL
INTO LINE.**

(When square)—
FORWARD.

(1) *On the word LINE—*

The *Captain*—If *Right* is in front, moves straight on to his front (at a short pace) during the wheel, so as to meet the right of the Company as it completes the quarter circle, taking post on that flank at the word **FORWARD**: if *Left* is in front, remains in his place, bringing his left shoulder round with the Company.

In the former case the *Lieutenant* will move to his place in Line; and in both cases the supernumerary rank will gain its proper distance from the rear rank; during the wheel.

The *Covering-serjeant* if *Right* is in front, will move across; if *Left* is in front, will move up; to his place in Line, during the wheel.

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Company will advance in Line.

† *Notes.*—A wheel is said to be made on a “halted (or standing) pivot” when—the Company being at the Halt—the pivot man, on the *Caution*, *faces* into the named direction: on a “moveable pivot” when—the Company being on the move—the pivot man brings his inner shoulder gradually round with the other men, at the same time circling round the wheeling point with very short paces. See page 24.

See the corresponding No. (XIX.) of PART II., p. 128.

No. VI.—*A Company as in Line wheeling into Column.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 6, 12, PP. 60, 69.)

(A) *From the Halt.*

AS A COMPANY IN LINE Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Line*. (p. 8.)

OPEN COLUMN
RIGHT IN FRONT.

[On the word **FRONT**—the pivot man (*i.e.*, the left-hand man of the front rank) faces to his right.]

‡ **RIGHT-ABOUT** (1) On the word **FRONT**—
FACE.

RIGHT WHEEL:
Q. MARCH.

The *Captain* moves out in quick time, and places himself one pace in front of the centre of the Company, facing to the front.

The *Covering-serjeant* runs out to the rear, to mark the spot where the right of the Company will rest in Column: facing (with shouldered Arms) to the new front, and raising his left arm.

(2) On the word **FACE**—

All (except the *Covering-serjeant* and pivot man) go to the right-about.

(3) On the word **MARCH**—

The *Captain* moves to the left (which will become the pivot) flank, and the *Lieutenant* moves across to his place in Column.

As the Company completes the quarter-circle wheel, the *Captain* gives Company: *Halt, front*:

‡ A Company will never be wheeled backwards (*i.e.* to the rear of the alignment it occupies) more than the *eighth* of a circle without being first faced about.

dress, falls in at once on the left, and looks to his front.

The *Covering serjeant*, at the same time, moves to his place in Column: and the supernumerary rank, which will have fronted with the Company, steps up to its proper distance from the rear rank.

[A Company as in Line will form OPEN COLUMN LEFT IN FRONT, in like manner: being faced about, and wheeled to the LEFT.]

‡ When a Company as in Line is intended to wheel into Column on a *moveable pivot from the Halt*, the word will be ON THE MOVE: RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL. Q. MARCH:: and the movement will proceed as in (B).

(B) *On a Moveable pivot.*

RIGHT(or LEFT) (1) *On the word WHEEL—*
WHEEL.

(When square)—
FORWARD.

The *Captain*—If the wheel is to the right, moves across (at a short pace) to the left flank of the Company during the wheel, the *Covering-serjeant* at the same time changing flank: if to the left, remains on the right flank and wheels with the Company, the Coverer falling back to his place during the wheel. In the former case, the *Lieutenant* will move by the rear to his proper place in Column: and in both cases the supernumerary rank will close up to its proper distance: during the wheel.

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The whole will advance; the touch being to the pivot flank.

‡ OBS. The words ON THE MOVE preceding

the caution **RIGHT** (*or LEFT*) **WHEEL** given to men at the **Halt** imply that the pivot man (*or men*), instead of facing into the named direction at the word **WHEEL**, will stand fast till the word **MARCH**, when the wheel will proceed exactly as if made on the **March**. Whenever, therefore, halted men are required to wheel so that **HALT** or **FORWARD** may be given at any period of the wheel, the caution must be preceded by the words **ON THE MOVE**.

¶ *A Column changing Direction.*

When a Column of Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) on the **March** is ordered to **CHANGE DIRECTION** to either flank, the leader of the front Company (Subdivision, or Section) immediately gives it *Right* (*or Left*) *Wheel*; and, when square, *Forward*. Each of the other leaders in succession, on reaching the spot where the first wheeled, will give the same word.

To whichever flank the wheel may be made, Officers do not change their positions.

(F. E. II., p. 70.)

See pp. 85, 117.

No. VIII.—*A Company as in Line or Column wheeling on the Centre, from the Halt.*

(F. E. II., Sec. 8, p. 63.)

[One Subdivision wheels forward, the other backward: the latter, if it exceeds 12 files, will be faced about and wheeled rear rank in front (*see* p. 31). The front-rank man on the inner flank of the wheeling-forward Subdivision will become the pivot, and face on the *Caution* (his rear-rank man uncovering) in the new direction.]

ON THE CENTRE: ⁽¹⁾ *On the word WHEEL—*
RIGHT (or LEFT)
WHEEL.

Q. *MARCH.*

The *Captain* places himself one pace in front of the centre of the Subdivision that is to wheel forward, facing to the front.

The *Covering-serjeant* runs out to mark the spot where the outer flank of the wheeling-forward Subdivision will rest; aligning himself with the pivot man, with shouldered Arms.

⁽²⁾ *On the word MARCH—*

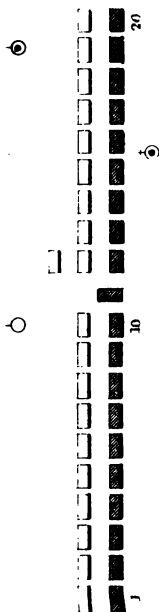
The *Captain* turns towards the Company, and moves to the flank marked by the *Covering-serjeant*. The quarter-circle wheel being completed, he will give *Company: halt: †dress—Eyes front* and take post on the right; or will give *Halt: †dress* and fall in at once; according as the wheel brings the Company into Line or Column. (*See Note.*)

The *Covering-serjeant* then falls into his proper place in Line or Column as the case may be.

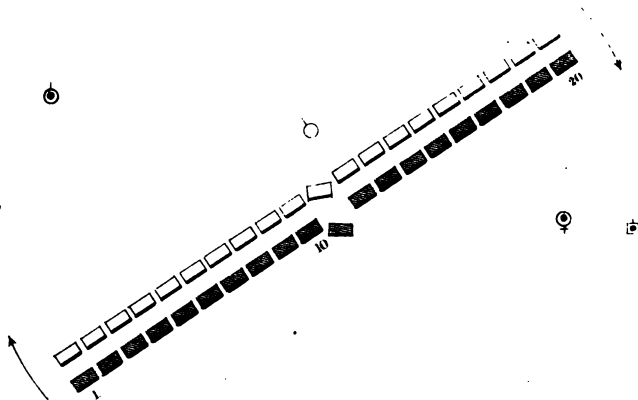
† If the retiring Subdivision was faced about, the word *Front* will follow *Halt*.

PART I. COMPANY DRILL, No VIII *A Company as in line wheeling on its centre to the Right (i.e. into Column Right in front.)*

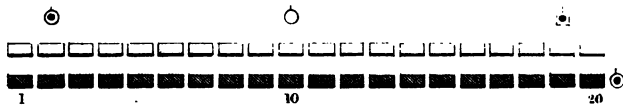
I. "ON THE CENTRE, RIGHT WHEEL."



II "Q. MARCH."



III "Halt: dress."



The *Lieutenant* moves across to his proper place, and the supernumerary rank takes its distance from the rear rank (*see Note*), during the wheel.

Note.—In wheeling on the Centre:—A Company as in Line if wheeled to the right, becomes a Company as in *Column Right* in front: if wheeled to the left, becomes a Company as in *Column Left* in front. Similarly:—A Company as in *Column Right* in front, if wheeled to the left; and a Company as in *Column Left* in front, if wheeled to the right; will wheel into *Line*.

¶ When a Company as in Line is required to wheel on its Centre as if preparatory to a *change of front in Line by Echelon, on fixed pivots* (*see page 164*): the Captain will dress it by the flank that wheels forward to the Covering-serjeant, and will then move to his proper post in Line. [When the Company is ordered to wheel a *given number of paces* (*i. e.* as if in changing front *obliquely* to the old Line), the Covering-serjeant will step the paces from the 8th file from the *centre*, counting towards the outer flank of the wheeling-forward Subdivision: the movement then proceeding as in No. VII.] This wheel on the centre should also be practised '*On the move*': *see No. XXVII. (C) of PART II., p. 163.*

No. IX.—*Wheeling forward by Subdivisions
(or Sections) from Line.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 9, 12, pp. 65, 69.)

(A) *From the † Halt.*

(Suppose the Wheel made to the Right.)

<p>AS A COMPANY IN LINE.</p> <p>BY SUBDIVISIONS [or SECTIONS]: RIGHT WHEEL.</p> <p>Q. <i>MARCH.</i></p>	<p>Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in <i>Line</i>. (p. 8.)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">•</p> <p>[On the word WHEEL—the right-hand man of the front rank of each Subdivision [or Section] faces to the right, his rear-rank man uncovering.]</p>
---	---

(1) *On the word WHEEL—*

The *Captain* places himself one pace in front of the centre of the right Subdivision [or 1st Section], which will be the leading one of the Column; facing to the front. (*See Note.*)

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

He turns towards that Subdivision [or Section], inclining to its left (the future pivot) flank, on which will be his place in Column.

As the leading Subdivision [or Section] is taking the last step that completes the quarter-circle wheel, the *Captain* gives *Halt: dress* to the whole Company, and falls into his place.

The *Lieutenant*, *Ensign*, and *Covering-serjeant* then take up their proper posts in the Column.

† For wheeling “on moveable pivots from the Halt,” see OBS. page 24.

The supernumerary rank closes up during the wheel.

[A Company will wheel by Subdivisions [or Sections] to the LEFT in like manner. The Column will be Left in front, and the Officers take post accordingly.]

BY SUBDIVISIONS
[or SECTIONS]:
IN THE — BACK-
WARDS WHEEL.

Q. MARCH.

In wheeling BACKWARDS by Subdivisions [or Sections] from Line:—Officers act as above directed. The *Covering-serjeant* runs back, on the *Caution*, to mark where the wheeling flank of the leading Subdivision [or Section] of the Column will rest. Pivot men face into the new direction, but their rear-rank men do not uncover.

† No Subdivision consisting of more than 12 files will be wheeled backward more than the *eighth* of a circle: but will be faced about, and wheeled forward rear rank in front. The caution and command will, in that case, be OPEN COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS [or SECTIONS]: RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT. *RIGHT-ABOUT FACE. RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL: Q. MARCH.*

(F. E. II., pp. 64, 67.)

Note.—In all wheelings, either forward or back, by Subdivisions [or Sections] from Line on a halted pivot, the *Captain* moves out, on the *Caution*, in front of that Subdivision [or Section] which will become the leading one of the Column and on the pivot flank of which his post will be.

(B) *On Moveable pivots.*

BY
SUBDIVISIONS
[or SECTIONS]:
RIGHT (or
LEFT) WHEEL.

(When square)—
FORWARD.

(1) *On the word WHEEL—*

The *Captain*—If the wheel is to the Right, will move across to his place on the left of the leading Subdivision [or Section], as he moves to the left of the Company in No. VI. (B): but—

If the wheel is to the Left, he will wheel with

the right Subdivision [or 1st Section], and at the word *FORWARD* will double up (the Coverer passing, at the same time, by the rear) to the pivot flank of the leading Subdivision [or Section].

In both cases, the leader of the rear Subdivision [or the leaders of rear Sections] will take post at the word *FORWARD*.

See page 86.

¶ *Directions for Marching in Column.*

Suppose an Open Column of Subdivisions:—

When the Column is to march on an *Alignment* (i.e. on the imaginary straight line lying between any 2 points on which the pivot flanks of the Column will be dressed), the *Captain*, as leader of the front Subdivision, will immediately fix on some intermediate point between himself and the distant point taken in prolongation of the pivot flanks. On these points he will march steadily when the Column is put in motion. The leader of the rear Subdivision, without regarding his men, will give his whole attention to preserving the leader of the front in an exact line with the distant point: and to keeping at wheeling distance (which is taken from front rank to front rank) from the preceding Subdivision. The same directions should be observed by Company and Section leaders marching in Column on an alignment.

(F. E., p. 72.)

The Column while on the March may be ordered to **CHANGE DIRECTION**. *See* ¶ p. 25.

No. X.—*An Open Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) wheeling into Line.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 11, 12, pp. 67, 69.)

[In an 'open' Column of Subdivisions (or Sections), the rear Subdivision (or each of the 3 rear Sections) is at a distance equal to its own breadth from the one immediately in its front; measuring from front rank to front rank.]

(A) *From the Halt.*

(Suppose Right in front.)

(Suppose Right in front.)

LEFT WHEEL
INTO LINE.

Q. *MARCH.*

[On the word *LINE*—pivot men face to the left (their rear-rank men uncovering), and raise the right arm till *Eyes front* is given by the Captain.]

(1) *On the word LINE—*

The *Captain* will fall back, and place himself one pace in front of the 2nd file from the left of the rear Subdivision [or Section] of the Column, facing to the front. The leader of the rear Subdivision [or of each of the 3 rear Sections] will fall back into the supernumerary rank.

The *Covering-serjeant* will move out to mark the spot where the right of the Company will rest in Line: standing (with shouldered Arms) facing the new front, and raising his left arm.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The *Captain* turns towards the men, and moves back round the pivot man to be ready to dress the Company from the left (as in No. V.).

When the wheeling flank of the right Subdivision [or 1st Section] is within 2 paces of the

Covering-serjeant, the *Captain* gives *Halt : dress.*
—*Eyes front* : then changes to the right flank of the Company, and falls in.

During the wheel, the *Supernumeraries* move to their proper places in Line.

The *Covering-serjeant*, at the word *Eyes front*, falls into his place on the right of the rear rank.

[A Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) *Left* in front will wheel into Line to the RIGHT in like manner: the Covering-serjeant marking the left of the Company, and the Captain dressing it from the right.]

N.B. The Subdivisions [or Sections], when dressing, will feel to the pivot file of the *Company*; that file, only, keeping its ground.

(Suppose *Right* in front.)
SUBDIVISIONS
[or **SECTIONS**]:
LEFT WHEEL
INTO LINE.

(When in Line)—
FORWARD.

(B) *On Moveable pivots.*

On the word LINE—

The *Captain*—If *Right* is in front, moves straight on to his front (at a short pace) during the wheel, so as to meet the right of the leading Subdivision [or Section] as it completes the quarter circle: if *Left* is in front, turns to the right-about, and moves straight across the front, to the right of the whole Company: so as to be in his place on the right of the Company when *FORWARD* is given.

In both cases the leader of the rear Subdivision [or of each of the rear Sections] will fall back on the command; and move, during the wheel, to his proper place in Line.

The *Covering-serjeant* moves, during the wheel, to his place in Line: passing, if the Column was *Left* in front, round the reverse flank(s) of the rear Subdivision (or Sections).

No. XI.—*The Echelon March of Subdivisions* (or Sections).

(F. E. II., Sec. 14, p. 71.)

N.B.—In Echelon, the flank on which the wheel into echelon is made will be the directing flank.

(From the Halt.)
TAKE GROUND
TO THE RIGHT
(or LEFT)
IN ECHELLON.

†ON THE MOVE:
BY SUBDIVISIONS
[or SECTIONS]
RIGHT (or LEFT)
WHEEL

Q. MARCH.

(When in echelon)—
‡FORWARD.

(1) On the word MARCH—

The Subdivisions [or Sections] wheel into the named direction.

If the Company is as in Column, and the wheel is made to the *reverse* flank, the *Lieutenant* will move up to lead the leading Subdivision [or Section]: otherwise, the Officers will all retain their original positions.

If the Company is as in Line, to whichever flank the wheel into echelon is made, all the Officers remain in their places: each Subdivision [or Section], if ground is being taken to the left, being led by its pivot man.

(2) On the word FORWARD—

The Echelon advances: the Subdivision [or each Section] without an Officer on the named flank, being led by its pivot man.

‡The word *FORWARD* will be given when the Subdivisions [or Sections] have wheeled the *eighth* of a circle: see ¶ 1, page 154.

Subdivision [or Section] leaders must keep

† An Echelon of Subdivisions or Sections is always formed on moveable pivots.

their dressing in a line exactly parallel to their original position: the leader of the Subdivision [or of each Section] in rear carefully preserving his distance from the pivot flank of that next him in the direction to which the Company is inclining.

[When this Movement is done on the March, the command will be *BY SUBDIVISIONS* [*or SECTIONS*]: *RIGHT* (*or LEFT*) *WHEEL.—FORWARD.*]

Re-forming Company.

*RE-FORM
COMPANY.*
*(When in line)—
FORWARD.*

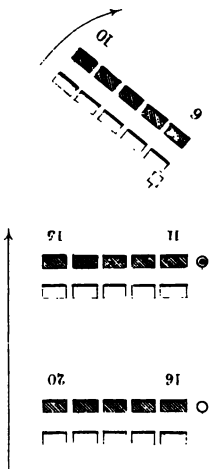
On the word *COMPANY*, the Subdivisions [or Sections] wheel back, on the pivot flanks of the Echelon, into Line: and on the word *FORWARD* the Company advances, if in Line by the right, if in Column by the proper pivot, flank.

On even ground, where the Subdivisions [or Sections] are not broken, they may be wheeled *forward*, on the reverse flanks, into line: the word being *BY SUBDIVISIONS* [*or SECTIONS*]: *LEFT* (*or RIGHT*) *WHEEL.—FORWARD.*

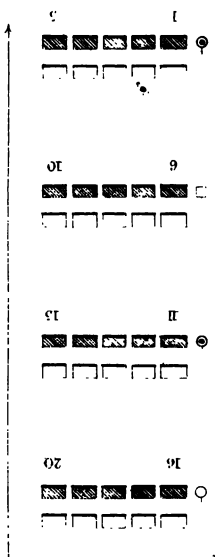
See pp. 127, 156.

PART I. COMPANY DRILL N° XII. A Company in Column of Sections (Right in front) forming to the Reverse Flank.

- II. When N°1 Section, having wheeled to the right and advanced 3 paces, is halted: and N° 2. Section has got the word "Right wheel."



- I. On the Caution: Officers having changed their flanks.



No. XII.—*A Company in Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) forming to the Reverse Flank.*

(F. E. II., SEC. 16, p. 73.)

[To form to the pivot flank, see p. 38.]

(*Suppose Right in front.*)

RIGHT FORM
COMPANY.

Suppose Right in front :—

On the word COMPANY—

Each Subdivision [or Section] leader will change, by the rear, to the right flank (*see Note*): the leader of the rear Subdivision [or of each of the 3 rear Sections] giving *By the right* as he places himself on that flank.

The *Captain* then gives *Leading Subdivision* [or *Section*]: *Right wheel*, and, the quarter-circle wheel being completed, *Forward*. Having advanced 3 paces, to clear the supernumerary rank, he will give *Halt : dress*; remaining ready to dress the rest of the Company.

The *Covering-serjeant* will then run out to mark the spot where the left of the Company will rest in *Line*: standing (with recovered Arms) facing towards the pivot flank.

The leader of the rear Subdivision [or of each of the rear Sections], on reaching the left of that last formed in *Line*, falls to the rear and gives *Left Subdivision* [or *No. — Section*]: *Right wheel*, and, when square, *Forward*. When the men are one pace in rear of the alignment, he will give *Halt : dress up*, and fall into his place in the supernumerary rank.

The left Subdivision [or the 3 rear Sections] having come up into Line: the *Captain* will dress the whole Company, give *Eyes front*, and fall in on its right.

The *Covering-serjeant*, at the word *Eyes front*, moves to his proper place in Line.

[A Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) *Left* in front will form Company to the LEFT in like manner: the leaders changing to the left flanks, and giving *Left wheel*, &c.]

Note.—On the Caution to form Line to the reverse flank: leaders will always change to that flank, *i.e.* to the right when the Column is Right in front, and *vice versâ*.

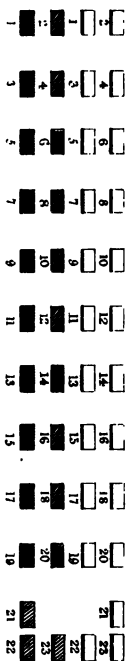
When it is not required to form (as above) at right angles with the present direction of the Column; the Drill Instructor will order the leading Subdivision [or Section] to CHANGE DIRECTION, and when it is at right angles with the future alignment, will give RIGHT (or LEFT) FORM COMPANY. The remaining Subdivision [or Sections] will change direction in the usual manner (*see* page 25): and will then form up in Line as described above.

See pp. 137, 142.

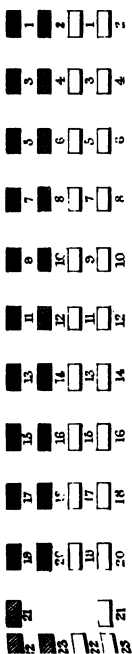
I. A Company in 2 ranks,
at Close order.



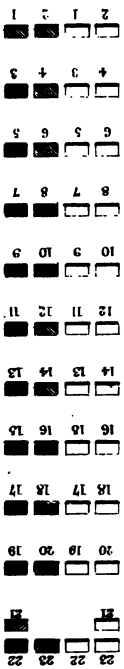
II. "Fours: deep."



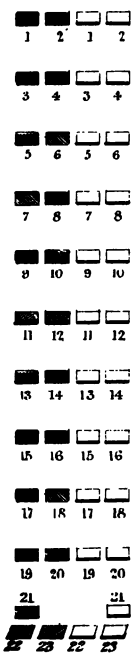
III. "Fours: about."



IV. "Fours: right."



V. "Fours: left."



No. XIII.—*File Marching, and the Flank March in Fours.*

(F. E., pp. 42—46 ; and 74—76.)

N.B.—Men will always be ordered to *TURN* to the Right as the left foot, and to the Left as the right foot, is coming to the ground.

COMPANY:
TO THE RIGHT
(or LEFT) FACE.

or
COMPANY:
FOURS, RIGHT
(or LEFT).

Q. MARCH.

[FOURS are formed from the Halt :—To the Front or Rear, by the 'left' files doubling in the proper rear of the 'right' files,—the whole, in forming to the Rear, first facing about : to the Right, by the 'left' files stepping up on the right of the 'right' files,—the whole first facing to the right : to the Left, by the 'left' files stepping back to the left of the 'right' files,—the whole first facing to the left. In all cases, the rear rank, at the word *FOURS*, steps back a pace of 12 inches ; after which, the 'right' files face (if necessary) to the right or left, but do not move off their own ground. See Note, p. 7.]

On the word *FACE* [or *RIGHT* (or *LEFT*)]—

*The *Captain* and *Covering-serjeant*, if not already there, change to the leading flank ; the former by the front, the latter by the rear : the *Lieutenant*, as usual, making a corresponding change in rear.

[If the Company is to move in *Fours* : the supernumerary rank, on the word *FOURS*, will step back one pace.]

(a) *Forming Company (Subdivisions or Sections) to the Front.*

[IN DOUBLE TIME:]
FRONT FORM
COMPANY
(SUBDIVISIONS,
or SECTIONS).

Suppose the Company moving by *Fours* :—

[On the command—The leading file of the Company (or of each Subdivision or Section) marks time. The re-

* The rule laid down in the *Field Ex.*, p. 72, line 2 from bottom, applies to "field manœuvres" ; not to a Company drilling singly.

***FORWARD.**
or
HALT: DRESS.

mainder—if Right is leading, turn to the left, form Two-deep, and wheel to the right; if Left is leading, turn to the right, form Two-deep, and wheel to the left; till the quarter-circle wheel is completed: looking outwards and feeling inwards. If the formation is to be **IN DOUBLE TIME**, the leading file(s) will move on steadily in quick time: the remainder making a *half* turn outwards, doubling up into their places, and taking up the quick time as they arrive in line with the leading file(s).]

On the Command—

The *Captain* moves, in quick or double time as the case may be, across the front: turning towards the men during the wheel, and falling in on the pivot flank of the Company [or leading Subdivision or Section] at its completion.

The *Lieutenant* and *Covering-serjeant* move to their places during the formation: if Subdivisions or Sections are formed, their leaders take post at the word **FORWARD** or **HALT: DRESS**.

(b) *Forming Company to the Reverse Flank.*

Suppose the Company moving in *Fours*: Right leading:—

[On the word **COMPANY**—The men at once form Two-deep:—The leading man of the rear rank then turns into the named direction, takes 2 paces to his new front, and halts: the remainder of the rear rank forming, in succession, on his left or right according as Right or Left was leading. The front-rank men wheel round their respective rear-rank men, and form successively in front of them.]

The *Captain*, when the leading file halts, places himself outside it, facing inwards: dresses the men on the *Covering-serjeant*, file by file as they come up in line: then gives *Eyes front*, and falls in.

The *Covering-serjeant* marks the outward flank of the Company, facing (with recovered Arms) towards the pivot flank: till the word *Eyes front*, when he falls into his place.

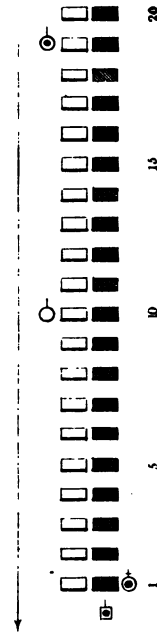
(Suppose Right
 leading.)
**ON THE
 LEADING FILE:
 RIGHT FORM
 COMPANY.**

* This word is not given when the formation is in Double Time.

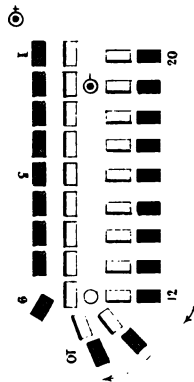
PART I. COMPANY DRILL. No. XIII. *File marching.*

40.

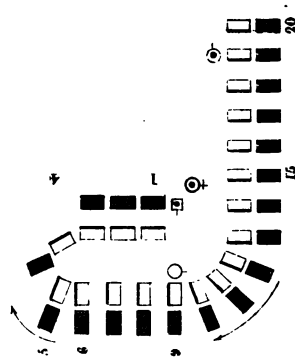
I. *A Company marching in File.*
(*Right leading*)



II. *Forming Company to the Right.*



III. *Forming Company to the Right-about.*



The supernumerary rank form with the Company : correcting their distance from the rear rank (if necessary) when cleared by the rest of the Company.

(c) *Forming Company to the Right- (or Left-) about.*

(Suppose Right
leading.)
ON THE
LEADING FILE:
RIGHT-ABOUT
FORM
COMPANY.

Suppose the Company moving in *Fours*: Right leading :—

[On the word COMPANY.—The men at once form Two-deep :—The leading rear-rank man then turns *about* into the named direction, and the formation proceeds as in (b).]

The *Captain* and supernumerary rank : as in (b).

The *Covering-serjeant* places himself on the inner flank, facing (with *shouldered Arms*) to the new front; falling in, as usual, at the Captain's word *Eyes front*. See p. 81.

The directions above given for a Company moving in *Fours* (with the exception, of course, of the direction to form Two-deep), apply equally to a Company marching in *File*.

Note.—If the Company while wheeling in *File* is ordered to *HALT* or *MARK TIME* when part only of the files have wheeled into the new direction, the remainder, at the word *Rear files cover off*, will cover off in rear by the side-step. But if *FRONT* is to follow *HALT*, the rear files need not be ordered to cover off, but will move to their places at the word *DRESS*.

¶ *Forming Four-deep on the March, Two-deep from Four-deep, &c.*

- (1) A Company advancing, or retiring, may form *Fours* either to its *present front* or to *either flank*: the formation proceeding on the same principle as when done from the halt (see page 39). The necessary distance between the ranks will be gained by the rear rank, on the

word *FOURS*,—instead of stepping back—marking time one pace: on the word *DEEP*, *RIGHT*, or *LEFT*, the 'right' files (after the whole have turned, if necessary, to the right or left) will mark time 2 paces while the 'left' get into their places as when halted; and on the 3rd pace, the Company will move steadily on in its new formation.

On the command *RE-FORM TWO-DEEP* [if moving to front or rear], or *FRONT* (or *REAR*) *TURN* [if moving to a flank], the 'right' files—after the whole have turned, if necessary, to the front or rear—will mark time, as before, 2 paces, while the 'left' resume their former places: and on the 3rd pace, the Company will move on in its original formation. The distance between the ranks will be corrected by the rear-rank 'right' files gaining a little ground while they are marking time.

- (2) When a Company moving to a flank in Fours is ordered to *FORM TWO-DEEP*:—The 'left' files, if Right is leading fall back, if Left is leading step up, into their places in File; and the rear rank then closes on the front. When a Company moving to a flank in File gets the word *FOURS DEEP*, the rear rank will incline from the front rank, and the 'left' files step up, or fall back, into their places in Fours.
- (3) A Company, having formed Fours to its proper front from the halt, or to its present front on the march, may be ordered to *CLOSE* on either flank, or to the Centre.†—The four men on the named flank, or in the centre, stand fast [or, if on the march, shorten their pace]: the remainder close by the side-step [or, by the diagonal march]. At the word *FROM THE RIGHT* (*LEFT*, or *CENTRE*): *RE-FORM TWO-DEEP*. [*Q. MARCH.*]: the four men on whom the closing was made stand fast [or, if on the march, shorten their pace]: the remainder open out by the side-step [or incline outwards], the 'left' files moving up in succession into their places as the intervals are opened, and the rear rank stepping up to its proper distance. *OFFICERS* close and open out with the Company.

† i.e. the left file of the Right Subdivision.

No. XIV.—*The Side (or Closing) Step.*

(F. E. II., Sec. 22, p. 76.)

[The touch is kept to the closing flank.]

COMPANY
AS IN LINE
(or COLUMN).Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Line* or
Column. (p. 8.)(Suppose as in *Line*)
AS A — WING
COMPANY:
[— PACES]
RIGHT (or LEFT)
CLOSE.(a) *In Line.*If the number of paces is named, the *Captain* remains in his place and closes with the Company.Q. *MARCH.*

† If the number of paces is not named:—

(1) *On the word CLOSE—*The *Captain* places himself, facing towards the men, 3 paces in front of that flank of the Company which is nearest to the centre of the supposed *Line*: crossing to the left flank by the *front*, if the Company is supposed to belong to the Right Wing. See (E) page 63.(2) *On the word MARCH—*He closes with the Company to the Point placed by the Drill Instructor: then gives *Company*: *Halt*, and (having, if on the left, changed by the *rear* to the right) falls into his post in *Line*.While the *Captain* is out in front, the *Covering-serjeant* occupies his place: closing, as usual, with the Company.

 † The Drill Instructor will, in this case, place a Point to shew where the Company is to be halted.

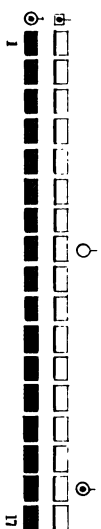
(b) In Column.

The *Captain* will always remain in his place, and close with the Company: unless he has—previously to the *caution*—taken up fresh covering, in which case he will stand fast and order the Company to close to him.

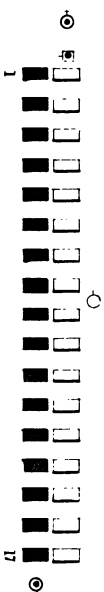
The *supernumeraries*, in all cases, close with the Company.

PART I. COMPANY DRILL, NEXT. A Company as in Column. (Left in front) countermarching by Ranks.

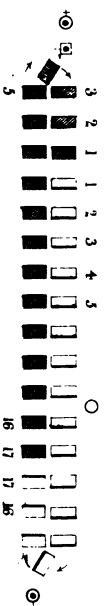
I On the word "RANKS".



II. After the command "RIGHT & LEFT FACE".



III. During the Countermarch.



IV. The Countermarch completed.



No. XV.—*Countermarching by Ranks and Files.*

(F. E. II., SEC. 23, p. 77.)

Note.—In countermarching by Ranks, the men will invariably countermarch to the Right: in countermarching by Files, round the front rank. In both cases, the effect of the Countermarch will be to change the pivot flank of the Column. (See page 84.)

COMPANY AS IN COLUMN:—
IN FRONT. Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Column*. (p. 8.)

(a) *By Ranks.*

COUNTERMARCH
BY RANKS.

RIGHT & LEFT
FACE.

[On the word *FACE*—whether Right or Left is in front, the front rank will face to the right, the rear rank to the left.]

Q. *MARCH.* (1) *On the word RANKS—*

The *Covering-serjeant* steps up, and covers the Captain.

(2) *On the word FACE—*

The *Covering-serjeant* faces to the right-about.

The *Captain* takes one pace outwards, and faces inwards: he then takes one long side-step in the direction of the new front, to which the *Covering-serjeant* will now be facing.

The *Lieutenant* moves up, and places himself one pace from the reverse flank of the front rank, facing inwards.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The whole (except the *Captain*, *Covering-serjeant*, and *Lieutenant*) step off: each rank wheeling close round to its right.

As the pivot man of the front-rank reaches the Covering-serjeant, the *Captain* gives *Company*: *halt, front : dress*, and falls in.

The *Lieutenant* and *Covering-serjeant*, at the word *Dress*, fall into their places in the new rear.

(b) *By Files.*

(Suppose Right in front.)

[On the word *FACE*—the men face into the named direction. On the word *MARCH*—they step off: the leading file wheeling short round the front-rank man, the remainder following in file.]

The *Captain*, *Lieutenant*, and *Covering-serjeant* act precisely as in (a).

N.B.—The Company will always be faced to the reverse flank: and marched up to the future pivot flank.

The supernumerary rank, in both (a) and (b), will face towards, and countermarch round, the reverse flank: each individual in it marking time as he arrives in his place, and halting and fronting with the Company.

A Company as in Line may be countermarched in like manner, either by Files or Ranks.

See No. XII. (D) of PART II., p. 107.

COUNTER-MARCH
BY FILES.

(Suppose Right in
front)—

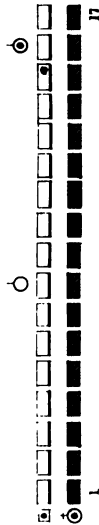
TO THE RIGHT
FACE.

LEFT COUNTER-
MARCH:

Q. MARCH.

PART I. COMPANY DRILL, No. XV. A Company as in Column (Left in front) countermarching by Files.

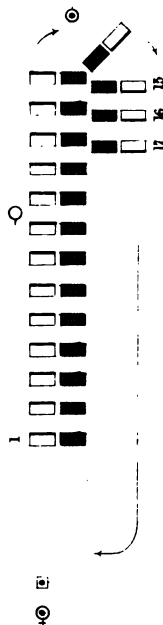
I On the word, "FILES."



II. "TO THE LEFT FACE."



III. The Countermarch commencing.



IV. The Countermarch completed.



The *Lieutenant*, when the left file of the left Subdivision reaches him, gives *Halt, front: dress*, and remains steady.

N.B.—When Officers or men have faced to the right about three-quarters, they will front by the left about three-quarters: and vice versa. On all other occasions they front by the right about. F. R., p. 12.

(B) *On the March.*

Support Right in front.

FORM
SUBDIVISIONS.

On the word SUBDIVISIONS—

The *Captain* gives *Left Subdivision: Mark time*, and when the reverse flank of that Subdivision is cleared by the other Subdivision, *Right half turn: moving across*, as will also the *Covering-serjeant*, to his place on the left of the right Subdivision.

The *Lieutenant* moves across, during the movement, between the Subdivisions, to meet the pivot (left) flank of the left Subdivision: and as that flank arrives at its position in the Column, gives *Front turn* and advances in his proper place.

[A Company in Column *Left* in front will diminish its Front on the same principle: the *right* Subdivision doubling in rear.]

Sections are formed from Subdivisions precisely as Subdivisions are formed from Company: the two pivot Sections being ordered by the Drill Instructor to *RIGHT- or LEFT- ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS FACE* [or, on the march, by the Captain to *Mark time: Right (or Left) half turn*]; and then respectively getting *Halt, front: dress* [or, on the march, *Front turn*] from the Serjeant and Ensign who will lead them. The *Lieutenant* will move in the same manner as the Captain.

No. XVI.—*A Company diminishing Front by forming Subdivisions: and Subdivisions forming Sections.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 24—26, pp. 78, 81.)

N.B. — In diminishing the front of a Company (or Column of Subdivisions), the *pivot* Subdivision (or Sections) will double in rear of the *reverse*.

(A) *From the Halt.*

AS A COMPANY
IN COLUMN:—
IN FRONT.

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Column*. (p. 8.)

(Suppose Right in front.)

FORM
SUBDIVISIONS.
(Suppose Right in
front)—

[On the word *FACE*—the rear-rank left-hand man of the right Subdivision will fall back and cover the 3rd file from its left, till the left Subdivision has passed him.]

LEFT
SUBDIVISION:
RIGHT-ABOUT
THREE-QUAR-
TERS FACE.

(1) *On the word SUBDIVISIONS*—

The *Lieutenant* falls back to mark the spot where the pivot (left) flank of the left Subdivision will rest.

(2) *On the word FACE*—

The † *Captain* takes a pace to the front, and faces inwards.

(3) *On the word MARCH*—

The left Subdivision marches off diagonally to the rear.

The *Captain* and *Covering-serjeant* move across to their respective places on the left of the right Subdivision.

† If the Captain is directed to give the executive words *Left Subdivision: Right-about three-quarters face*: he will first take his pace to the front, and face inwards.

The *Lieutenant*, when the left file of the left Subdivision reaches him, gives *Halt, front : dress*, and remains steady.

N.B.—When Officers or men have faced to the right-about three-quarters, they will front by the left-about three-quarters: and *vice versa*. On all other occasions they front by the right-about. (F. E., p. 12.)

(B) *On the March.*

(Suppose Right in front.)

FORM
SUBDIVISIONS.

On the word SUBDIVISIONS—

The *Captain* gives *Left Subdivision : Mark time*, and when the reverse flank of that Subdivision is cleared by the other Subdivision, *Right half turn*: moving across, as will also the *Covering-serjeant*, to his place on the left of the right Subdivision.

The *Lieutenant* moves across, during the movement, between the Subdivisions, to meet the pivot (left) flank of the left Subdivision: and as that flank arrives at its position in the Column, gives *Front turn* and advances in his proper place.

[A Company in Column *Left* in front will diminish its Front on the same principle: the *right* Subdivision doubling in rear.]

Sections are formed from Subdivisions precisely as Subdivisions are formed from Company: the two pivot Sections being ordered by the Drill Instructor to *RIGHT-(or LEFT-) ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS FACE* [or, on the march, by the Captain to *Mark time : Right (or Left) half turn*]; and then respectively getting *Halt, front : dress* [or, on the march, *Front turn*] from the Serjeant and Ensign who will lead them. The *Lieutenant* will move in the same manner as the *Captain*.

No. XVIII. — *Diminishing and increasing Front, by breaking off Files and bringing them again to the Front.*

(F. E. pp. 46, 83.)

[The broken-off files (which, at Drill, will always break off from the *pivot flank*) must lock up well while in rear: when ordered to the front they make a half turn towards the pivot flank, and move up into line by lengthening their pace. If additional files are broken off, those already in rear will mark time and then incline till they cover them: when part, only, of the files are brought to the front, those left in rear will incline, with a lengthened pace, so as to cover the files on the pivot flank.]

BREAK OFF
— FILES.

On the Caution—

(Suppose a Column of Subdivisions, Right in front.)

The *Captain* leading the front Subdivision gives — *files on the left: To the right turn, Left wheel*: and, as those files drop to the rear, moves to the flank of the remainder of his front rank.

The *Lieutenant* leading the rear Subdivision, on reaching the spot where the files were broken off the leading Subdivision, gives the same word and acts in like manner.

The *Covering-serjeant* moves up and covers the Captain till all the files are again brought up.

To further diminish the front of the Column: each Subdivision leader in succession will, on a caution from the Drill Instructor, again give — *files on the left: To the right turn, Left wheel.*

No. XVI.—*A Company diminishing Front by forming Subdivisions: and Subdivisions forming Sections.*

(F. E. II., SECS. 24—26, pp. 78, 81.)

N.B.—In diminishing the front of a Company (or Column of Subdivisions), the *pivot* Subdivision (or Sections) will double in rear of the *reverse*.

(A) *From the Halt.*

AS A COMPANY
IN COLUMN:—
IN FRONT.

Officers and Covering-serjeant: as in *Column*. (p. 8.)

(Suppose Right in front.)

FORM
SUBDIVISIONS.

(Suppose Right in
front)—

LEFT
SUBDIVISION:
RIGHT-ABOUT
THREE-QUAR-
TERS FACE.

Q. MARCH.

[On the word *FACE*—the rear-rank left-hand man of the right Subdivision will fall back and cover the 3rd file from its left, till the left Subdivision has passed him.]

(1) On the word SUBDIVISIONS—

The *Lieutenant* falls back to mark the spot where the pivot (left) flank of the left Subdivision will rest.

(2) On the word *FACE*—

The † *Captain* takes a pace to the front, and faces inwards.

(3) On the word *MARCH*—

The left Subdivision marches off diagonally to the rear.

The *Captain* and *Covering-serjeant* move across to their respective places on the left of the right Subdivision.

‡ If the *Captain* is directed to give the executive words *Left Subdivision: Right-about three-quarters face*: he will first take his pace to the front, and face inwards.

No. XIX.—*Diminishing and increasing Front, by breaking into Files (or Fours) and re-forming Sections, Subdivisions, or Company.*

(F. E. II., Sec. 31, p. 83.)

[The Company will be 'as in Column', and the advance will be made from the reverse flank.]

BREAK INTO
FILES [*or* FOURS]
FROM THE
RIGHT (*or* LEFT).

TO THE RIGHT
(*or* LEFT) FACE.

or
FOURS RIGHT
(*or* LEFT).

LEFT (*or* RIGHT)
WHEEL:
Q. MARCH.

On the word *FACE* [*or* *RIGHT* (*or* *LEFT*)]—

The *Captain* and *Covering-serjeant* change to the leading flank of the Company; the former by the front, the latter by the rear: the *Lieutenant* (as usual) making a corresponding change in the rear.

[An open Column of Subdivisions [*or* Sections] may, in like manner, advance from the right or left of Subdivisions [*or* Sections]: the whole Company being thus brought into file or fours, and the Supernumeraries taking post in rear accordingly. The advance will always be made from the reverse flank.]

These movements may also be done on the March.

The Company while marching in Files or Fours may be ordered to *FRONT FORM SECTIONS* [*SUBDIVISIONS, or COMPANY*]. See No. XIII.

100

101

102

103

104

105

106

107

108

109

110

111

112

113

114

115

116

117

118

119

120

121

122

123

124

125

126

127

128

129

130

131

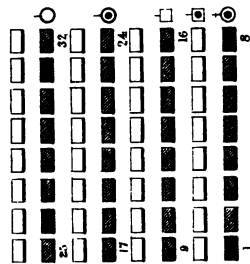
132

133

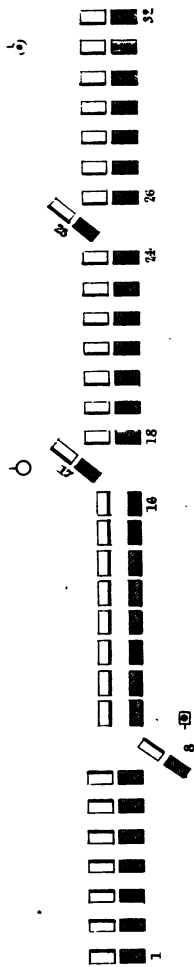
134

PART I. COMPANY DRILL No XX. Forming Close Column of Sections, preparatory to resisting Cavalry.

II. The Column formed.



I. On the Caution.



W.D.M. del.

Vincent Brooks, Imp.

No. XX.—*Forming Close Column of Sections, and Company Square.*

(F. E. II., SEC. 32, p. 84.)

N.B.—In this formation the 2nd Section stands fast. The men should be cautioned to count the number of paces that take them into Column: so that in re-forming Company, the men of the 1st Section may turn to the rear, those of the 3rd and 4th Sections to the front, together. This movement will be performed with Arms at the Shoulder, and *Riflemen* will fix swords.

1. *Forming Square.*

FORM CLOSE
COLUMN OF
SECTIONS.

Q. *MARCH.*

[On the word SECTIONS—the 1st Section faces to the left and disengages to the front; the 3rd and 4th face to the right and disengage to the rear. On the word MARCH—Column is formed on the 2nd Section: the men halting and fronting, without word of command, as they arrive in Column. The distance between the Sections will be one pace.]

On the Caution—

The *Captain* moves out to the front: the *Supernumerary Officers* stand fast.

The *Covering-serjeant* places himself in front of the leading file of the 1st Section, which he will lead into Column.

Column having been formed:—The *Captain* places himself on the left of the front rank of the 1st Section: the *Supernumerary Officers* fall in on the left flanks of their respective Sections.

The *Covering-serjeant* covers the *Captain*.

2. *To resist Cavalry.*

PREPARE FOR
CAVALRY.

(1) On the word CAVALRY—Officers and non-commissioned officers move into the centre of the

Column : and the men then face outwards, so as to shew a front of equal strength in every direction.

READY.

(2) *On the word READY*—If the sides of the Square are only 2 or 3 deep, the front rank only will kneel : if 4 deep, the two front ranks kneel. [If required to Fire : the standing ranks will fire by files, the kneeling rank(s) in volleys. The firing words (*see* page 223) will be given, on a caution from the Drill Instructor, by the *Captain*.]

3. *To move the Square.*

On the word FACE—The ranks face in the named direction : and on the word *MARCH*, the Square moves off.

On the word HALT—The Square will halt, and the men face outwards without any word of command.

4. *Re-forming Company.*

[*On the word COLUMN*—the men will face to their proper front in Column, and touch into the pivot flanks.

On the word COMPANY—the 1st Section will face to the right, the 3rd and 4th Sections to the left.]

(1) *On the word COLUMN*—

The *Captain*, *Coverer*, and *Supernumeraries* return to their places on the flanks of Sections.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—

Nos. 1, 3, and 4 Sections move out : the 1st, when clear, turning to the rear ; the 3rd and 4th, in succession, to the front. Each of the 3 Sections will form up in line with the 2nd Section, without word of command : the Officers &c. falling into their proper places.

[Swords will be unfixed by word of command.]

See No. XXXIII. of PART II., p. 180 : and *Note* p. 164.

THE SQUARE
WILL ADVANCE
(RETIRE, or MOVE
TO THE —).

INWARDS FACE.
Q. MARCH.

HALT.

RE-FORM
COLUMN.

RE-FORM
COMPANY.

Q. MARCH.

No. XXI.—*Forming Rallying Square.*

(F. E., II., SEC. 33, p. 86.)

**FORM
RALLYING
SQUARE.**

[The Drill Instructor will first cause the Company to unfix bayonets, and to disperse; and will place an Officer (who will hold up his sword, and face in the direction of the supposed enemy) as a rallying point.]

On the word SQUARE—The men double up to the Officer placed as a rallying point: fixing bayonets (or swords) and ordering Arms as they reach him. The 2 first men who come up to the Officer form on his right and left, facing outwards: the 3 next in front: the 3 next in rear, facing to the rear.

The next 4 men place themselves one at each angle of the Square thus formed: and others, as they come up, complete the faces between those angles. After each completion of the faces of the Square, the 4 next men place themselves one at each angle: others completing the faces as before.

THE SQUARE WILL
ADVANCE
(RETIRE or MOVE
TO THE —).
INWARDS FACE.
Q. MARCH.
HALT.

PREPARE FOR
CAVALRY.
READY.

2. To move the Square.

The Square will move, and halt, as described in No. XX. for a Company Square: the Drill Instructor, before putting it in motion, will cause the leading face to be dressed.

3. To resist Cavalry.

On the word READY: as in No. XX. 2.

[The Square will fire (on the Drill Instructor's caution) as directed for a Company Square; by command of the Officer on whom it is formed.]

REDUCE THE
SQUARE.4. *Re-forming.*

On the word SQUARE—The Officer on whom the Square is formed, will give *Re-form Company*.

The *Covering-serjeant* then marks the pivot flank, facing the supposed enemy; and the men form upon him.

[Swords will be unfixed by word of command.]

Dispersed parties may be formed, as above, in one or more Squares (each consisting of any number of men) according as they may be more or less dispersed. Every man will run to the rallying point nearest him.

* * The Rallying Square is used in Battalion *Light Drill* when men of different Companies mixed together in extended order, or detached Skirmishers, are supposed to be overtaken by Cavalry.

Practice for Assembling on Coverers.

The Company having been dispersed, and the Covering-serjeant placed facing the supposed enemy:—at the word (or bugle sound) *CLOSE*, the men will run in and form Company, as in Column Right in front, on the Serjeant; order Arms, and remain at *Attention*.

Word of command for Dismissing a Company.

(The men should be at the Shoulder.)

TO THE RIGHT FACE.

LODGE ARMS.

[When men parade with side - arms, they will be dismissed thus: *TO THE RIGHT FACE.—BREAK OFF.*]

PART II.—BATTALION DRILL.

As the Drill of a Company is conducted with reference to the evolutions of a Battalion, so are the evolutions of a Battalion with a view to the manœuvres of a Brigade. Field movements and firings are performed with fixed bayonets, except when troops are acting as Light Infantry.

(A.) FORMATION OF A BATTALION ON PARADE.

A Battalion assembles on Parade in open Column Right in front; as follows:—

The several Companies having been told off and proved (as explained in PART I., pp. 12—14) on their private parades:—the Covering-serjeants, under the Adjutant's direction, will mark the spots where the pivot flanks of their Companies are to rest in Column on any given alignment; taking wheeling distance (*see* p. 82).

On the sound *ADVANCE*: the Companies will be marched upon their respective Coverers into Column; and each Captain will dress his men, and then give the words *Eyes front—Order Arms—Stand at Ease*.

On the Commanding Officer's word *TELL OFF THE BATTALION*, all the Captains take one pace to their front and face inwards. The Captain of No. 1 then gives *No. 1: †Right Company*: then the Captain of No. 2, *No. 2: Left Company*: then the Captain of No. 3, *No. 3: Right Company*: and so on to the rear of the Column.

The Commanding Officer will next tell off the Battalion

† Odd numbers are *Right*, even numbers *Left*, Companies: the *Right-centre* and *Left-centre* Companies are the two immediately on the right and left of the centre of the Battalion. A *central* Company is any but either of the two flank Companies.

into Wings, and will give *EYES FRONT*: upon which the Captains resume their places.

The Column will then be wheeled into Line. *See* p. 128.

INSPECTION.—When Companies in Column are required to take Open order for Inspection, they will be considered as independent Companies. Accordingly, at the Battalion Commander's *caution* **REAR RANKS TAKE OPEN ORDER**, the Officers and Coverer of each Company will place themselves, and at his word *MARCH* will move, as when taking Open order in *Line* (*see* page 15). The supernumerary rank will step back 4 paces.

Open order having been taken: the Battalion Commander will, by direction of the Inspecting Officer, give the word **LEADING COMPANY STAND FAST. REMAINING COMPANIES: ORDER ARMS.—STAND AT EASE.**

The Captain of each (except the leading) Company, as the Inspecting Officer approaches, will give it the commands *Attention—Shoulder Arms*. Each Captain will receive the Inspecting Officer with a salute, and will follow him during the inspection of his Company; and as the inspection of his Company is finished, will give *Rear rank take Close order: March. Order Arms: Stand at Ease*. He will then, together with the Coverer and Lieutenant, resume his proper place in Column; the supernumerary rank closing up.

(F. E., pp. 96–99.)

(B.) POSTING OF OFFICERS AND COLOURS.

(¹) *In Line (at Close order)*—

The Senior and Junior Majors are 6 paces in rear of the centre of the Right and Left Wings respectively; the Adjutant is 6 paces in rear of the Colours.

The Captain, Supernumeraries, and Covering-serjeant of each Company are posted as explained in B(¹) page 8: except the † Lieutenant of the Company on the left of the Line, who is placed on the left of its front rank, covered by a Serjeant in the rear rank.

(F. E., p. 103.)

† In *all* formations from Line this Officer will fall back, on the *Caution*, into the Supernumerary rank.

N.B.—When Companies are to move along the rear of the Line: when a Line is to advance in Double Column from the centre, or to retire from a flank, or from both flanks in rear of the centre: and in forming Column on any named Company: the Supernumerary rank will, on the *Caution*, close up 2 paces.

THE COLOURS. The Colour party, arranged as described at p. 67, is between the two centre Companies.

⁽²⁾ *In Column of Companies—*

The Senior and Junior Majors are 2 paces from the reverse flanks of the centre of the Right and Left Wings respectively. The Adjutant is 2 paces from the reverse flank of the right-centre or left-centre Company, according as Right or Left is in front.

When a Column is ordered to *advance* or *retire* :—If the Column is at open distance, the Major of the leading Wing will place himself in rear of the pivot flank of the 2nd Company from the front, taking care not to get in front of the Captain of the 3rd Company; if at close or quarter distance, the Major of the rear Wing will place himself in rear of the line of Captains: to superintend the direction.

The Captain, Supernumeraries, and Covering-serjeant of each Company: as in B ⁽²⁾ p. 8.

[In *Route Marching*, whether the troops are marching in Column or in Fours, the Majors' usual places will be in rear of their respective Wings: if there is only one Major, his place will be in rear of the Battalion. Captains march in rear of their Companies, which will be led by a Subaltern or Serjeant. Company leaders when repeating the Battalion Commander's word *ATTENTION* or *MARCH AT EASE*, will look to the rear, so as to be distinctly heard by the leader next in rear.]

(F. E., pp. 97, 117, 304.)

THE COLOURS. In open or quarter-distance Column, the Colour party is posted in rear of the leading centre Company: at one pace distant from the rear rank, covering the 3rd, 4th and 5th files from the pivot flank. In *countermarching*, it countermarches independently, and moves across to the rear of the new leading centre Company.

In close Column, the Colour party forms in single rank (*see* p. 67) between the two centre Companies; and in

countermarching can only face about, correcting its formation when the Column opens out.

(F. E., pp. 97, 117, 128.)

Note.—When Companies lose their order in Column, Officers will always take post as in Column *Right* in front: and the Captains will then re-number from the front. If the Battalion is simply inverted—the regular succession of the Companies remaining unchanged—it will not be necessary to re-number.

(F. E., p. 96.)

(3) *In Column of Subdivisions (or Sections)*—

The Captain, Supernumeraries, and Covering-serjeant of each Company: as in B⁽³⁾ & (4), p. 9.

The Colour party is one pace in rear of the leading Subdivision (or Section) of the leading centre Company.

[In Double Column, the Colour party is in rear of the 2 leading Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections).]

(4) *In Echelon of Companies*—

In an Oblique Echelon, each Captain marches on the 'inner' flank of his Company: in a Direct Echelon, the Captain of the leading Company marches on its outer flank; the remaining Captains on their 'inner' flank. In both cases, the Covering-serjeant of each Company is on the reverse (or 'outer') flank of its front rank. (*See* page 2.)

Subalterns: as in *Column*.

[In an Oblique Echelon of Subdivisions (or Sections) formed from Line, to whichever flank inclining, the Officers and Covering-serjeant of each Company retain the places they occupy in Line. *See* p. 35.]

The Colours form an independent Section.

(F. E., pp. 187, 200.)

(5) *In the flank march by Fours*—

The Captain, Supernumeraries, and Covering-serjeant of each Company: as in B⁽⁵⁾, p. 9.

Exceptions.—⁽¹⁾ When a Column takes ground to a flank by Fours, Company leaders march on that flank of their leading four which is nearest to the 'Company of direction' (*see* p. 125): if ground is taken to the reverse flank, the Captains—unless ordered to do so—will not change flanks, but the Lieutenants will move up and lead. ⁽²⁾ When a *close*

Column takes ground to a flank by Fours, each Company leader—Captain or Lieutenant, as the case may be—will place himself in front of the front-rank man of his leading four: the Covering-serjeant, if on the leading flank, marching at the head of the 2nd rank. The Supernumeraries will march between the fours. (F. E., pp. 75, 76.)

(C.) RULE FOR CHANGING FLANKS.

The Rule for changing flanks having been fully stated (*see* page 10), and the necessary directions having also been given, as occasion required, in PART I.: nothing further will be said on that point in PART II.

(D.) DRESSING.

When a halted Column is wheeled into Line: each Captain dresses his Company, when in Line, from the pivot man. When the Companies of a Battalion come up *successively* into Line, in which case the dressing is always made from the point of *appui* (*see* page 66) to the opposite hand:—Captains invariably lead up into Line on that flank of their Company which is nearest to the Battalion point of *appui*; and dress their men, when halted, from the 2nd file beyond the Covering-serjeant of the Company last formed in Line, the outward flank of which is considered the point of *appui* for the succeeding Company.

In *Column* the men correct their own dressing, unless it is otherwise directed.

(F. E., pp. 99, 136, 154.)

(E.) CLOSING TO CORRECT DISTANCES.

1. When too much or too little distance has been taken in forming, or wheeling into, Line, the wrong distance will be corrected by the Side-step: the closing being invariably made to, or from, the centre of the Battalion.

(F. E., p. 102.)

(¹) If the number of paces a Company is to close, is named by the Commanding Officer, its Captain remains in Line: standing fast if the Company is closed to the left in order to take in files on its right; closing with the Company

on his right if that Company is closed to the right in order to admit files into his own ; but always closing with his Company when closing towards the centre of the Battalion.

(2) If the number of paces a Company is to close is not named by the Commanding Officer :—At the word *CLOSE*, its Captain moves out and (crossing by the front, if in the Right Wing) places himself 3 paces in front of that flank which is nearest the centre of the Battalion, facing towards the men. At the word *MARCH*, he closes with his Company till it is halted † : and then (re-passing by the rear, if in the Right Wing) resumes his post in Line. See p. 43.

† *N.B.*—When a Wing of a Battalion is ordered to close, no number of paces being named, the Commanding Officer will halt it at the proper time ; but when one or more Companies in different parts of the Line are closed, the Captain of each will give *Halt* when the required distance is taken, or (in the case of a Company which has to take in files) when the files that were out have come up into their places.

2. Should a *Column*, or any of its Companies, be ordered to close to either flank, each Captain closes with his Company : unless he has previously taken up fresh covering, in which case he will stand fast and order his Company to close to him.

(F. E., p. 76.)

(F.) FIRINGS.

(1) In firing by Companies from Right to Left and *vice versa*, or from flanks to centre and *vice versa* : the Captain of each Company will, on the *Caution*, fall to the rear of its centre. He will give the word *No. — : Ready* when the preceding Company fires, and *Present* after a pause of slow time ; resuming his post in Line when *CEASE FIRING* is sounded, or the ordered number of rounds has been fired.

N.B.—If the number of rounds is ordered : each Captain, when his Company has given its fire in the last round, will give *No. — : Shoulder Arms*. If (the number of rounds not having been specified) any Company is at the 'ready' when *CEASE FIRING* sounds, its Captain will give *No. — : Half-cock Arms. Shoulder Arms*.

(2) In firing by Battalion or by Wings, and in File-firing (see APPENDIX L): Captains remain in their places, and give no word of command.

[File-firing during formations commences with the Company of formation. The outer Section of the last formed Company reserves its fire till the succeeding Company has been dressed and got *Eyes front*: should the firing, however, be ordered to commence from the centre, each Company, when it is formed in Line and has got the word *Eyes front*, takes up the fire at once, from its flank nearest the centre of the Line.]

Troops armed with the short rifle will always fire front-rank kneeling.

(G.) ALIGNMENT AND POINTS OF FORMATION.

(1) On every occasion of a formation in Line, a Battalion *aide* will run out, on the *Caution*, to mark each extremity of the new † alignment: and when the Battalion moves up to an alignment in Double Column (p. 138), or deploys on a central Company (p. 147), its point of entry will be marked by a third *aide*.

In all Deployments and formations of Line on any one Company, a Serjeant will be placed in front of each flank file of that Company, as a base: when Line is formed on the centre of the Battalion, the Coverer of each centre Company will mark its outward flank, the centre Serjeant giving a third (centre) base point. The Coverer of each of the remaining Companies will run out as it arrives within 20 paces of its point of formation, and will mark its distance; covering in the line established by the base points. [The base marked by the two Serjeants of the named Company (or by the three central base points) is called the '*Base of formation*', and is always determined before the formation commences: the points given by the Coverers of the re-

† i.e. the imaginary straight line determined previously to a formation.

maining Companies, during the progress of the formation, are called '*intermediate points*'. See p. 197.]

The general, or Brigade, alignment (which, when a Battalion is manœuvring singly, is always supposed) will be at arm's length from the line of Serjeants giving the Battalion points: and those Serjeants will cover at that distance in rear of it.

[The Battalion *aides* are 3 non-commissioned officers (one on the right, one on the left, and one in the centre) told off to take up the Brigade alignment. The *aides*, in marking a base for a Line to form on, always face towards, and cover on, the Brigade point of *appui*: or, when a Battalion is manœuvring singly and that point is not named, they face towards the Field-officer who dresses the Battalion points.]

That extremity of the alignment on which a formation is made, and *from* which all intermediate points are dressed, is called the Point of *appui*: the opposite extremity of the alignment, *upon* which the Line or intermediate points are dressed, is termed the Distant point.

E.g.—When a Column Right in front deploys on the leading Company, the point of *appui* for the Line will be on the right of that Company; and the distant point will be on the left of the intended Line. And, similarly, were the same Column to deploy on the rear Company, the point of *appui* would be on the left of that Company; and the distant point would be on the right of the intended Line.

When Line is formed on a central Company, the centre of that Company; when on the 2 centre Companies, the centre of the Battalion; will be the point of *appui*: and there will be a distant point on each flank of the Line.

When Companies come up successively into Line, the outward flank of the Company last formed in Line is, as has been before stated, considered as the point of *appui* for the succeeding one: the men, in all cases, looking towards the Battalion point of *appui* for their dressing.

Points are corrected by a Field-officer from the point of *appui*, and must always be kept clear: Companies should

‡ *Appui*,—Fr. A support.

therefore be halted in rear of them, and then dressed up into Line. The Major nearest the point of formation; or, when the formation is on the centre of the Battalion, the Senior Major; will dress the Coverers or pivots.

[When mounted Officers give points, they place their horses at right angles with, and facing, the alignment; and the head of the horse will mark the line: if the Officer dismounts, he will hold his horse by the outer hand, facing towards the point of *appui*, his inner arm marking the alignment. When men on foot (except pivot men, or the Covering-serjeant marking the outer flank of a Company, Subdivision, or Section, wheeling into Line or Column) mark points, they stand, with recovered Arms, facing to the point of *appui*; their inner arm also marking the alignment.]

(2) When a Column opens out to wheeling distance from any named Company, or when an open Column forms on an alignment, the *aides* mark the ground on which the right and left† of the Battalion would rest were it wheeled into Line: the Captains being dressed in a line at arm's length from them.

(F. E., pp. 91—95.)

† On the principle that regard is to be had to Brigade movements.

THE COLOURS.—The Colours, each carried by an Officer, are formed in an independent party composed (except when the Battalion is in close Column) of 2 ranks:—the front rank consisting of the Queen's colour on the right, the Regimental colour on the left, and a Serjeant in the centre; the rear rank consisting of 3 non-commissioned officers. In close Column, the Colour party is formed in a single rank between the 2 centre Companies: two of its rear rank forming on the right of the Queen's colour, the third on the left of the other colour.

The Colours are posted as already stated (pp. 61, 62): and move, independently, from one formation to another, by command of the Officer carrying the Queen's colour.

(F. E., pp. 96, 97, 117.)

SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

A Battalion in Line may, if necessary, be told off from right to left, as it is told off in Column from front to rear. Captains when numbering their Companies, remain in their places. (F. E., p. 96.)

No. I.—*A Battalion in Line taking Open order, and resuming Close order.*

(F. E. III., SEC. 4, p. 104.)

(A) *Taking Open order.*

[*On the word ORDER*—The right-hand rear-rank man of each Company, and the left-hand rear-rank man of the whole Line, step back 2 paces and face to the right: When the rear rank has stepped back:—they front, and raise the right arm till the supernumerary Serjeant on the right of their Company gives *Eyes front*. The Serjeant-major dresses the whole of the supernumerary rank: then gives *Eyes front*, and falls in on the right of the Staff-serjeants.]

REAR RANK
TAKE
OPEN ORDER.

MARCH.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

(1) *On the word ORDER*—

The Senior Major moves up to the right, the Junior Major and Adjutant to the left, of the front rank of the Line.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—

The Adjutant remains steady. The Majors move up to the line of Officers: the Senior Major dresses it, and gives STEADY.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS.

The Captain and Subalterns of each Company

act as in the corresponding No. (II.) of PART I. : except that the Captain does not dress the Subalterns after they move out to the front, but looks to his right; all the Officers porting swords, and looking to their front, at the *Major's* word STEADY.

[The Staff Officers (*i.e.* the Paymaster, Surgeon, Assistant-surgeon, and Quartermaster) will form on the right of the front rank of the Line, at one pace distance: their swords not drawn.]

THE COLOURS.

On the word MARCH—The Colours take 3 paces to the front, and dress with the line of Officers.

(B) *Resuming Close order.*

REAR RANK
TAKE
CLOSE ORDER.

MARCH.

FIELD OFFICERS.

(1) *On the word ORDER*—

The mounted Officers turn their horses' heads to the right.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—

They resume their places in Close order.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS : as in No. II. of PART I.

[The Staff Officers face inwards on the *Caution*; and at the word MARCH, resume their places in rear of the Band.]

THE COLOURS.

(1) *On the word ORDER*—Face to the right.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—Resume their places in Line.

SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. II.—*Advancing and Retiring in Line.*

(F. E. III., SEC. 5, p. 106.)

[The centre Serjeant of the leading rank directs; the touch being to the centre.]

(A) *Advancing.*

THE LINE WILL
ADVANCE

STEADY.
Q. MARCH.

BATTALION:
HALT.

On the Caution—

The Adjutant gives the general direction to the centre Serjeant, and then gives STEADY. When the men step off, he remains (with the Serjeant-major) halted in rear of the centre till the Line has advanced 20 or 30 paces; to ascertain whether the direction is correct: He then follows in rear.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS: are in their proper places in Line.

Charging in Line.

PREPARE TO
CHARGE

CHARGE.

HALT.

*On the Caution—*The front rank bring their Arms to the 'trail'; the rear rank continuing at the 'slope': and on the following word CHARGE, the front rank comes to the 'charge'; the whole breaking into double time.

*On the word HALT—*The Battalion halts; the front rank coming to the 'shoulder', the rear

rank to the 'carry': and both ranks remain steady, in whatever position they may be.

[Troops armed with the short rifle will advance in the first instance, at the 'shoulder', with swords fixed; and on the *Caution*, the front rank will trail, the rear rank will slope. On the word *HALT*, both ranks will halt and shoulder. (F. E., p. 346.)]

(B) *Retiring.*

[On the word *RETIRE*, and after the word *HALT: FRONT*:—The two left files of the right-centre Company take 2 paces to the rear, and then one pace outwards from each other; resuming their places, in each case, as soon as the Adjutant and Serjeant-major have passed through the Line.]

N.B.—A Line will never be faced to the rear till every preparation has been made for its marching off.

THE LINE WILL
RETIRE.

STEADY.
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

Q. MARCH.

BATTALION:
HALT; FRONT.

On the word RETIRE—

The Adjutant passes through the ranks to the proper front of the Colour party, to superintend the direction of the rear-rank centre Serjeant: giving the word *STEADY* when it is determined. At the word *HALT: FRONT*, he will return (passing, as before, through the Line) to his place in the proper rear.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS—as in (A): the former marching in the *present* rear rank.

THE COLOURS.

*On the word RETIRE—*The Colour party faces about.

For a Line *changing Front* by the formation of Open Column, see No. XXIV.: by Echelon, see No. XXVII.

SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. III.—*Dressing a Battalion in Line.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 7, p. 107.)

THE BATTALION WILL DRESS BY THE RIGHT (or LEFT).

COVERERS:
— PACES TO THE FRONT.
Q. MARCH.STEADY.
BATTALION:
Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior or Junior Major according as the dressing is to be by the Right or Left, will move up and dress the Coverers, when they are in line, from the named flank: and will then give STEADY. When the Battalion has been dressed, the same Major will give a 2nd word STEADY, and resume his place.

CAPTAINS.

If dressing is to be by the Right:—

(1) *On the word* FRONT—

Take one pace to the front, and one pace to their left: and, their Coverers having passed to the front, resume their places.

If dressing is to be by the Left:—

(1) *On the word* FRONT—

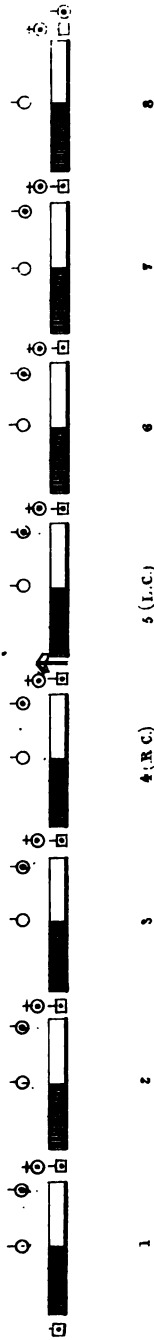
Change flanks: but do not move up into their places on the left of their Companies till the Coverers have passed to the front.

[The Captain of the left-flank Company, when he moves up, will place himself on the left of his Lieutenant.]

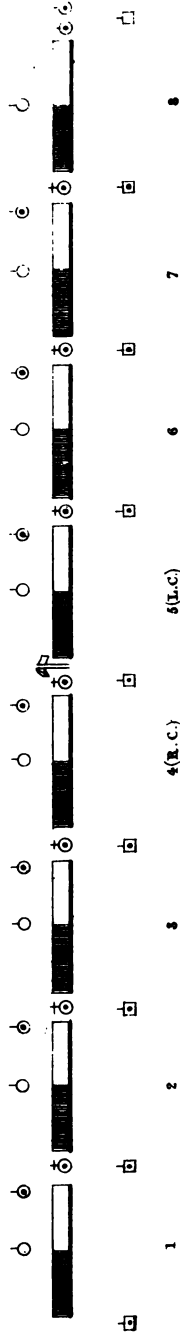
ART. 2. BATTALION DRILL. N° III

Dressing a Battalion in Line (by the Left.)

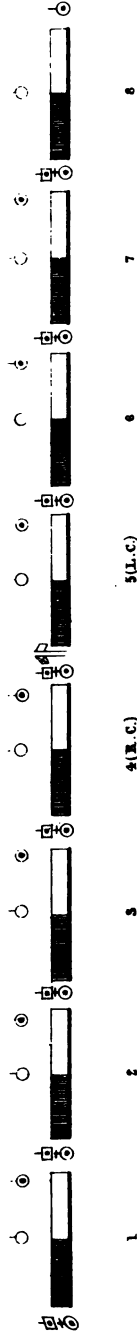
I. After the caution "COVERERS: PACES TO THE FRONT."



II. After the word "Q. MARCH" and the Major's word "STEADY."



III. After the 2nd word "STEADY."



W.D.M. del.

Vincent: Brooks lith.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Line steps off. Each Captain when his Company is two paces in rear of the alignment gives *No. — : halt. By the right (or left) dress up*, dresses his Company, gives *Eyes front*, and (changing flank if necessary) falls in on its right.

(3) *On the 2nd word STEADY—*

The Captains take one pace to their front and one to their left, to let the Coverers pass to the rear : and then resume their places.

SUBALTERNS.

(1) *On the word FRONT—*

The Subaltern on the left of the Line takes one pace to his left : and his Coverer having passed to the front, resumes his place.

(2) *On the 2nd word STEADY—*

The same Officer takes a pace to his left to let his Coverer pass to the rear, and then resumes his place.

SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. IV.—*Advancing and Retiring by Wings.*

(F. E. III., Smc. 8, p. 108.)

[The Right Wing is commanded by the Senior Major, and led by the centre Serjeant: the Left Wing is commanded by the Junior Major, and led by the Officer carrying the Regimental colour. The rear Wing may at any time be brought up in line with the other: no points are given.]

(A) *Advancing and Firing.*

(If the Line is advancing)—
FIELD OFFICERS.

BATTALION:
HALT.

THE BATTALION
WILL ADVANCE
AND FIRE BY
WINGS.

On the word WINGS—The Junior Major gives
LEFT WING: FIRE A VOLLEY. AT — YARDS, READY—PRESENT.
The men having fired and loaded, he gives LEFT
WING: SHOULDER ARMS. BY THE RIGHT: Q. MARCH: and
when the Wing has advanced 30 paces, LEFT WING:
HALT.

The Senior Major, the moment the Left Wing
has fired, gives RIGHT WING—BY THE LEFT: Q. MARCH,
and when his Wing has advanced 30 paces,
RIGHT WING: HALT. On hearing Q. MARCH given
by the Junior Major, he gives RIGHT WING: FIRE A
VOLLEY. AT — YARDS, READY—PRESENT: and the men
having fired and loaded, RIGHT WING: SHOULDER
ARMS. BY THE LEFT: Q. MARCH.

The Wings continue to advance alternately;
each being halted by its Commander when (after
having fired and re-loaded) it has gained 30
paces: and being ordered to fire when the Wing
in rear, having re-loaded, gets Q. MARCH.

(B) *Retiring and Firing.*

(From the Halt.)
THE BATTALION
WILL RETIRE
AND FIRE BY
WINGS.

FIELD OFFICERS.

On the word WINGS—The Junior Major gives
LEFT WING: FIRE A VOLLEY. AT — YARDS, READY—PRESENT.
The men having fired and loaded, he gives LEFT
WING: SHOULDER ARMS. RIGHT-ABOUT FACE. BY THE PRE-
SENT LEFT: Q. MARCH: and when the Wing has
retired 15 paces, LEFT WING: HALT, FRONT.

The †Senior Major, the instant the Left Wing
halts, gives RIGHT WING: FIRE A VOLLEY. AT — YARDS,
READY—PRESENT. The men having fired and loaded,
he gives RIGHT WING: SHOULDER ARMS. RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE. BY THE PRESENT RIGHT: Q. MARCH: and when
the Wing has retired 15 paces beyond the Left
Wing, RIGHT WING: HALT, FRONT.

The Wings continue to retire alternately; each
being halted and fronted by its Commander when
(having re-loaded and been faced-about) it has
retired 15 paces beyond the other, and being
ordered to fire when the other Wing is halted
and fronted.

‡ If this caution is given while the Battalion is *march-
ing to the Rear*—the Senior Major immediately gives
RIGHT WING: HALT, FRONT: the Left Wing getting the
same word from its Commander when it has moved on 15
paces. The Right Wing will then be ordered to fire; and
both Wings will proceed as above described.

Both in advancing and retiring:—the Adjutant
moves with the Right Wing, the Serjeant-major
with the Left; superintending the direction.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS: are posted as in
Line.

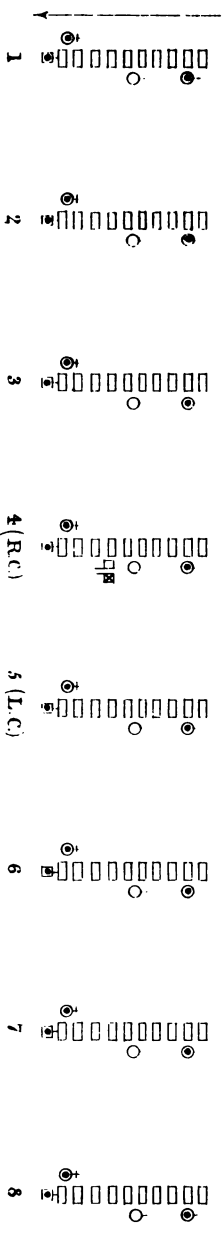
THE COLOURS in (A) and (B).

The Queen's colour, and the two centre and one of the other rear-rank Serjeants, march on the inward flank of the Right Wing: the Regimental colour, and the remaining rear-rank Serjeant, on the inward flank of the Left Wing.

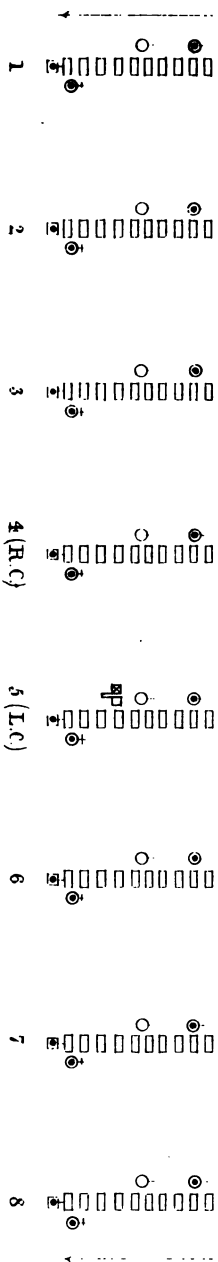
1. The Line advancing.



II (a) After the command "FOURS LEFT RIGHT WHEEL," (supposing the fours are to pass from the left of Companies.)



II (b) After the command "FOURS RIGHT LEFT WHEEL," supposing the fours are to pass from the Right.



SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. V.⁽¹⁾—*When a Battalion advancing in Line passes Obstacles.*

(F. E. III., SEC. 9, p. 110.)

(A) *By all the Companies breaking into Fours.*

FROM THE RIGHT FIELD OFFICERS.

(or LEFT)

OF COMPANIES
PASS BY FOURS
TO THE FRONT.FOURS: RIGHT.
LEFT WHEEL.

or

FOURS: LEFT. CAPTAINS.
RIGHT WHEEL.[No.—;
COMPANY OF
DIRECTION.]

The Junior or Senior Major, according as the fours pass from the right or left of Companies, will superintend the dressing of the heads of Companies.

Each Captain places himself on that flank of his leading four which is nearest the Company of direction; preserving his dressing and distance from that Company, as far as circumstances will allow. When no Company of direction is named, that Company which, if *FRONT TURN* were given, would be at the head of the Column, will direct.

The Battalion when thus broken into Fours, becomes an open Column taking ground to a flank; and the Column, should a further reduction of front be necessary, may close to either flank or on the centre. (*See* No. XVIII.)

Note.—If, during this movement, it be required to form **SQUARE**—the Column will be ordered to form Square on the centre: or, if it has been closed to quarter distance, to turn to the front and form on the leading Company. (*See* pp. 172, 173.)

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will march in rear of the usual files from the leading flank of the left- or right-centre Company according as the word was *FOURS: RIGHT* or *FOURS: LEFT*; so as to be in its proper place in Column when *HALT: FRONT* or *FRONT TURN* is given.

Re-forming Line. If *HALT: FRONT*, or *FRONT TURN*, is given, the Battalion will be in open Column (Left or Right in front according as the word was *FOURS: RIGHT* or *FOURS: LEFT*); and may be then wheeled into Line as in No. XIX. Or, Line may be formed by the word [*IN DOUBLE TIME:*] *FRONT FORM COMPANIES*: each Company forming on its leading file. (See No. XIII. of PART I.)

(B) *By breaking off Files.*

If the Obstacles are small, and opposite to parts only of the Line:—the files impeded by them may break off as from the flank of a Company in Column (*see* No. XVIII. of PART I.): always, in so doing, turning towards and wheeling in rear of their own Company; or, if in the centre of their Company, turning to the right and wheeling to the left. Additional files may break off as occasion requires; all the files, however, moving up to the front as soon as practicable.

Should a Line thus broken be halted, the broken-off files will form in rear of the Obstacles, in lines parallel to the front; so as to present an apparently unbroken Line, and to be able to fire.

[A Company or Subdivision (or a succession of files amounting to a Subdivision) broken off, will move by Fours.]

¶ *Advancing by double Fours (or Files) from the centre.*

A Line may also, if necessary, pass Obstacles by the ADVANCE BY DOUBLE FOURS (or FILES) FROM THE CENTRE. Each Captain will march in his usual place with his leading four (or file): but *all* the Supernumeraries will be formed in single rank between the Wings, thus forming a 9th (or 5th) rank. The Colour party will be formed in single rank between the two centre Companies; its front rank leading, and both front and rear ranks marching Right in front; the Queen's colour will move between the two leading fours (or files).

(F. E., p. 122.)

SECTION I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

No. V.⁽¹⁾—*When a Battalion retiring in Line passes Obstacles, or marches through a Relieving Line.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 10, p. 112.)

(A) *Passing Obstacles.*

OFFICERS and COLOURS: as in No. V.⁽¹⁾

FROM THE
PROPER RIGHT
(or LEFT) OF
COMPANIES PASS
BY FOURS
TO THE REAR.

FOURS: LEFT.
RIGHT WHEEL.
or
FOURS: RIGHT.
LEFT WHEEL.

[No. — :
COMPANY OF
DIRECTION.]

(B) *Marching through a Relieving Line.*

The Line will receive the command to break into Fours, when it arrives at 12 paces from the relieving Line: the latter throwing back files to let the fours of the former pass through.

If, however, the Line is *at the Halt*, and the relieving Line is advancing in its rear; the former will get the command to break into Fours from the right of Companies [*FOURS: RIGHT. RIGHT WHEEL*] when the latter arrives within a Company's wheeling distance; and will then pass through the rear Line as above directed.

OFFICERS and COLOURS: as in No. V.⁽¹⁾

Note.—As a general Rule, the relieving Line will be kept as far as possible unbroken; but for purposes of parade both Lines may form Four-deep, and the fours of the one pass through the fours of the other.

Re-forming Line. If *HALT: FRONT*, or *FRONT TURN*, is given, the Battalion will be in open Column (Right or Left in front according as the Companies

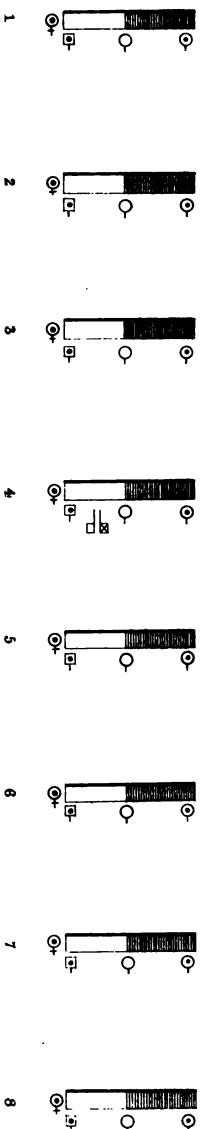
passed by Fours from the proper right or proper left): and may then be wheeled into Line (see No. XIX.). Line may also be formed to the proper front by the command *ON THE LEADING FILES: RIGHT- (or LEFT-) ABOUT FORM COMPANIES:* each Covering-serjeant marking the inner flank of his Company. (See No. XIII. of PART I.)

PART 2. BATTALION DRILL N^o VI.^(A)

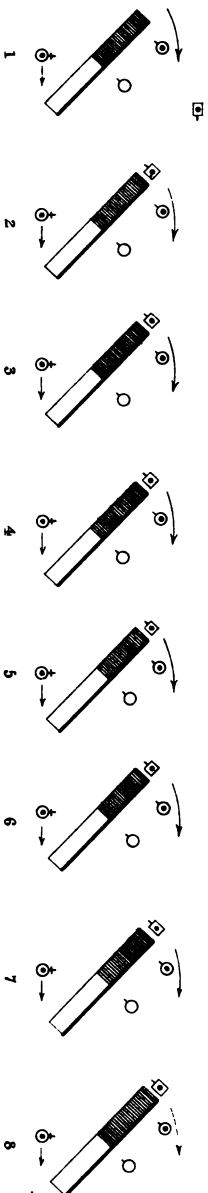
When the Line breaks into open Column, right in front.

83.

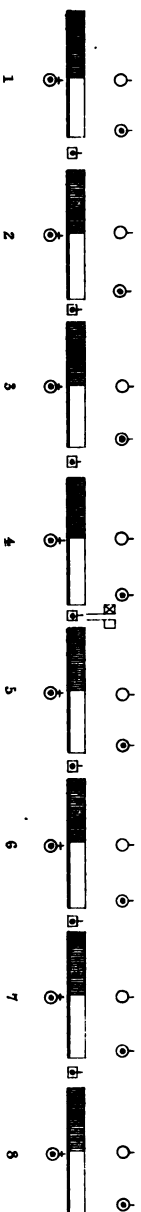
III. The movement completed.



II. During the Wheel.



I. After the Caution.



SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

No. VI.—*A Line wheeling into Open Column.*

(F. E. III., SECS. 26, 27, pp. 135—137.)

(A) *From the Halt.*

(a) By Companies.

[Pivot men as in PART I., No. VI.]

OPEN COLUMN
RIGHT (or LEFT)
IN FRONT.

*RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.*

*RIGHT (or
LEFT) WHEEL:
Q. MARCH.*

FIELD OFFICERS.

If Right is to be in front:—

(1) *On the word FRONT—*

The Senior Major moves to the right of the Line.

(2) *On the word FACE—*

The Junior Major and Adjutant turn their horses' heads to the rear.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The Junior Major and Adjutant move to their places in Column: *see* p. 61.

When the Companies are halted and fronted, the Senior Major corrects the covering of the Captains from the head of the Column: then moves to his place.

[If the Column is to be formed LEFT in front, the Junior Major will act on the left of the Line as above explained for the Senior Major on the right: the Senior Major and Adjutant moving to their places in Column during the wheel.]

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS: as in the corresponding No. (VI.) of PART I. The Subaltern on the left of the Line will fall back, on the *Caution*, into the supernumerary rank.

[Captains should be careful not to *Halt*: *front* their Companies till they have wheeled well back: so that the dressing may be forward.]

(b) By Subdivisions (or Sections).

[Pivot men as in PART I., No. IX.]

BY SUBDIVISIONS
[or SECTIONS]
ON THE LEFT
(or RIGHT)
BACKWARD
WHEEL.
Q. MARCH.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in (a).

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS: as in the corresponding No. (IX.) of PART I.

[When the Subdivisions or Sections exceed 12 files, they will be faced about and wheeled as Companies, rear rank in front (*see* p. 31): the caution and command, in that case, being OPEN COLUMN OF SUBDIVISIONS [or SECTIONS]: RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT. *RIGHT-ABOUT FACE*, &c.]

THE COLOURS in (a) and (b).

(1) *On the word FACE* [or *WHEEL*].—The Colour party will face to the right or left according as Right or Left is to be in front; and will disengage to the rear.

(2) *On the word MARCH*.—It will wheel to the right (or left), and move to its place in Column.

(B) *On Moveable pivots.*

BY COMPANIES
[SUBDIVISIONS or SECTIONS]:
RIGHT
(or LEFT)
WHEEL.

FIELD OFFICERS.

Move to their places in Column during the wheel.

FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 87

(*When square*)—
FORWARD.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS: as in the corresponding Nos. (VI. and IX.) of PART I.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will wheel independently, and move by the shortest line to its place in Column.

When a Battalion is required to wheel on moveable pivots *from the Halt*, the Caution will commence with the words ON THE MOVE. (*See OBS., page 24.*)

SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

No. VII.—*A Battalion moving in Open Column from either Flank along the Rear.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 28, p. 138.)

(A) *By Companies.*

THE BATTALION
WILL MOVE IN
COLUMN OF
COMPANIES
FROM THE
RIGHT (or LEFT)
ALONG THE
REAR.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major of the Wing that is to lead, having superintended the wheeling of the first 2 Companies, will follow in rear of the 2nd. The other Major, and Adjutant, will follow, in their places, on the *proper* pivot flanks of the Companies they cover in Line; unless the word *CHANGE YOUR FLANKS* is given, when they will change to the reverse flank.

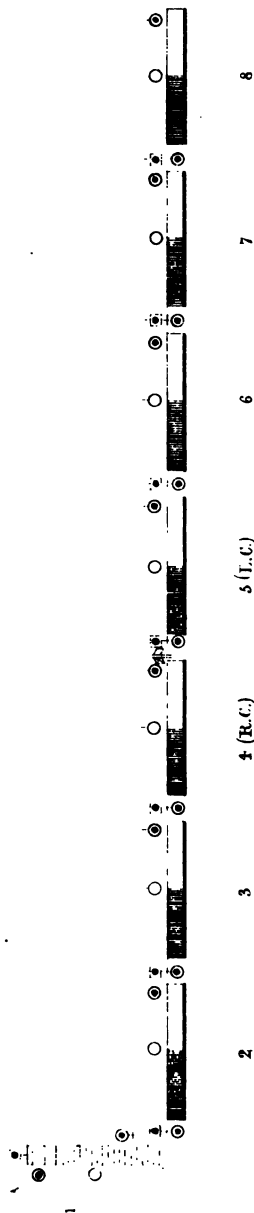
CAPTAINS.

(1) If the Movement is from the Right:—

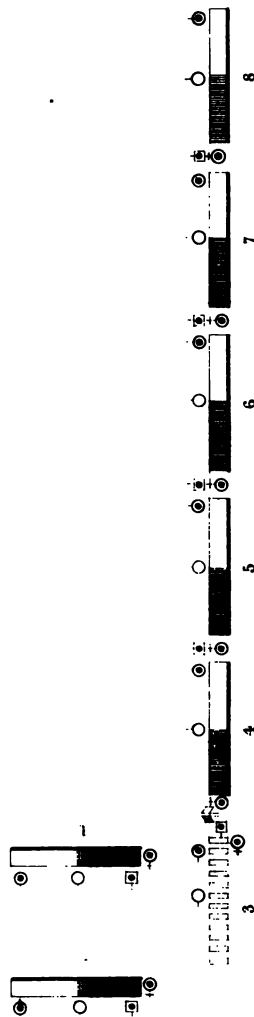
On the word REAR—The Captain of the right-flank Company gives *No. 1.—Fours: left*, and places himself on the right of his leading four. He then gives *Left wheel: Q. March*, and moves out with his Company perpendicularly to the rear, till he arrives at 3 paces in rear of the Line. He then halts, allowing his men to move past him till the rear four reaches him; when he will give *Front turn. By the right: taking post*, and continuing, on that flank, unless ordered to change.

PART 2. BATTALION DRILL, No VII. The Battalion moving in Open Column from the Right along the Rear.

I. When A:1 has got the word "March" and is moving out to the rear of the Line.



II. When 1 & 2 have turned to the front into column, and 3 has got the word "Fours Left".



Each of the other Captains in succession will proceed in like manner: so timing his words of command as to move out his Company the moment the preceding Company passes it, so that it may turn into Column without losing distance.

(2) If the Movement is from the Left:—

The Captain of the left-flank Company, and the other Captains in succession from the left will move out their Companies by the word *Fours: right. Right wheel: Q. March:* and, when clear of the supernumerary rank, will give *Front turn. By the left:* leading on the left flanks when in Column, unless ordered to change flanks.

SUBALTERNS.

On the Caution: The Officer on the left of the Line falls back into the supernumerary rank, which closes up to one pace from the rear rank.

The Subalterns face, and turn into Column, with those files which they cover in Line: the Lieutenant changing flank, if the movement is from the Left, when *Front turn* is given.

THE COLOURS.

Move as a Company, but in file: and when *Front turn* is given, follow in rear of the leading centre Company.

(B) *By Subdivisions [or Sections].*

THE BATTALION
WILL MOVE IN
COLUMN OF
SUBDIVISIONS
[or SECTIONS]
FROM THE RIGHT
(or LEFT)
ALONG THE REAR.

Each Subdivision [or Section] leader in succession from the named flank, will act as explained in (A) for Captains. The Captains will give the word to, and lead, that Subdivision [or Section] which will be the leading one of their Company when in Column.

SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

No. VIII.—*A Battalion formed in Line advancing from a Flank in Open Column of Companies (Subdivisions or Sections).*

(F. E. III., SEC. 29, p. 139.)

(A) *Advancing by Companies.*

RIGHT (or LEFT)
COMPANY TO
THE FRONT.
REMAINING
COMPANIES:
ON THE MOVE,
RIGHT (or LEFT)
WHEEL

Q. *MARCH.*

(When square)—
FORWARD.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major of the leading Wing will, during the advance, be in rear of the pivot flank of the 2nd Company from the front, superintending the direction: the other Major, and Adjutant, in their places on the reverse flank of the Column.

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of the named Company, if it is the Right, changes his flank; if the Left, stands fast.

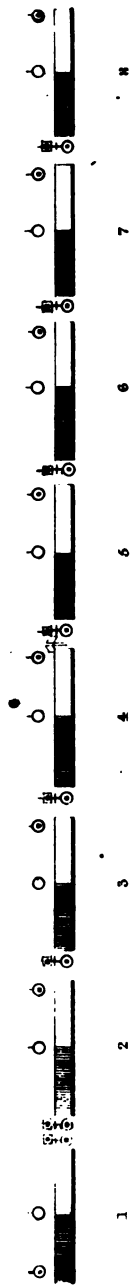
(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Captain of the named Company advances with it, at a short pace, till he hears the Captain of the next Company give *Wheel*. He then gives *Leading Company: Forward* [or, if he has changed flank, *Leading Company: Forward. By the left*]: and advances at full pace.

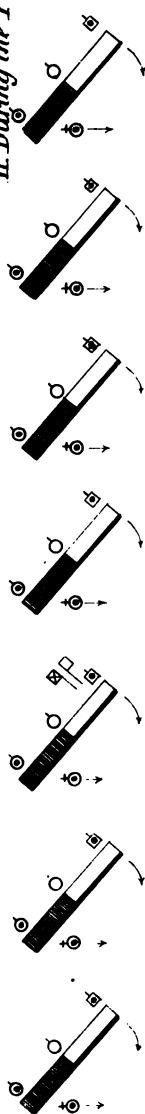
PART 2. BATTALION DRILL, N^o VIII.

A Battⁿ moving off in open column from the Right flank.

1 On the Caution.

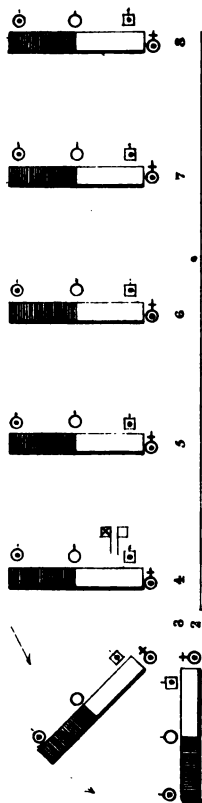


II. During the 1st wheel.



(stepping short)

III. During the 2nd wheel.



FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 91

The other Captains:—If the advance is from the Right, move straight to their front, during the wheel, so as to fall in on the pivot (left) flank of their Companies when *FORWARD* is given: if the advance is from the Left, remain in their places and wheel with their Companies.

(3) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Captain of the Company next the leading one gives *No. — : Left, or Right, wheel* (according as the advance is from the right or left): and, when square, *No. — : Forward. By the left (or right)*. Each of the other Captains in succession, on reaching the spot where the 2nd Company wheeled, will give the same word: taking care not to lose distance.

SUBALTERNs.

On the Caution—

The Officer on the left of the Line falls back into the supernumerary rank: and if the advance is from the Right, the Lieutenant of the named Company changes his flank; the other Lieutenants changing during the 1st wheel.

(B) *Advancing by Subdivisions [or Sections].*

RIGHT (or LEFT) SUBDIVISION [or SECTION] TO THE FRONT. REMAINING SUBDIVISIONS [or SECTIONS]: ON THE MOVE, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.

Q. *MARCH.*

FIELD OFFICERS.

If the advance is by Subdivisions: as in (A), substituting the word 'Subdivision' for 'Company.' If the advance is by Sections: the Major of the leading Wing will march (not *between* the 2nd and 3rd Sections from the front, but) clear of the Captains.

(When square)—
FORWARD.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain who is to lead the Column, changes to the rear of the inner flank of his outward Sub-division [or Section].

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Captain who is to lead the Column, moves up on the flank to the rear of which he moved on the *Caution* : and proceeds as in (A).

The remaining Subdivision [or Section] leaders move to their place in Column during the 1st wheel : and act, in succession, as explained in (A) for the Captains.

THE COLOURS.

Wheel as a Company. They then get the word *Left half turn* if the advance is from the Right ; and *vice versâ* : marching diagonally till they are in rear of the pivot flank of the Company in their front, and get *Front turn*.

These Movements are performed on the March in like manner : the word of command being *RIGHT (or LEFT) COMPANY [SUBDIVISION, or SECTION] TO THE FRONT: REMAINING COMPANIES [SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS], RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.—FORWARD.*

SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

No. IX.—*A Battalion formed in Line advancing from the Centre in Double Column of Companies (Subdivisions or Sections).*

(F. E. III., Sec. 30, p. 140.)

[The Coverers of the two flank Companies give points for the 2nd wheels. See p. 201.]

(A) *By Double Column of Companies.*

TWO CENTRE
COMPANIES TO
THE FRONT.
REMAINING COM-
PANIES: ON THE
MOVE, INWARDS
WHEEL.

Q. *MARCH.*

(When square)—
FORWARD.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Junior Major places himself in rear of the pivot flank of the 2nd Company from the front of the left Wing, to superintend the direction.

The Senior Major and Adjutant, having superintended the 2nd wheel of all the Companies, follow in rear of the Column.

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of the left-centre Company, only, changes his flank.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Captains of the right-centre and left-centre Companies act precisely as explained for the Captain of the named Company in No. VIII. (A): except that the left-centre Captain gives

Forward: By the left to both the centre Companies, when the two Companies next in rear have commenced their 2nd wheel. *See Note.*

[The right-centre Company, as it advances, closes on the left-centre; to fill the space vacated by the Colours.]

The other right-wing Captains act as in the advance in open Column from the Left, the other left-wing Captains as in the same advance from the Right, (*see* No. VIII. A.): except that the left-wing Captains give *Forward: By the left* to both Companies on the completion of the 2nd wheel.

SUBALTERNS.

On the Caution—The Officer on the left of the Line falls into the supernumerary rank, the whole of which will close up 2 paces. The Lieutenant of the left-centre Company changes his flank.

The other left-wing Lieutenants change flanks during the 1st wheel.

THE COLOURS.

On the Caution: the Colour party steps back 2 paces.

(B) *By Double Column of Subdivisions [or Sections].*

TWO CENTRE
SUBDIVISIONS
[or SECTIONS] TO
THE FRONT.
REMAINING SUB-
DIVISIONS
[or SECTIONS]:
ON THE MOVE,
INWARDS WHEEL
Q. MARCH.

FIELD OFFICERS.

If the advance is by Subdivisions: as in (A), substituting the word 'Subdivision' for 'Company'. If the advance is by Sections: the Junior Major marches (not *between* the 2nd and 3rd Sections from the front, but) clear of the Captains.

I. On the Tautolog.

... ..



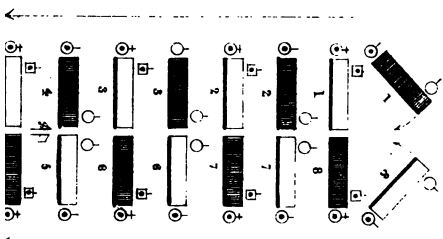
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8



II. At the completion of the 1st wheel

III. When all the subdivisions but 2 have completed the 2nd wheel.

(K.C.) (10.0.)
"Stopping short".



(*When square*)—
FORWARD.

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captains of the right-centre and left-centre Companies move out; and place themselves, the former in front of the left file of his right Subdivision [or 3rd Section], the latter in front of the right file of his left Subdivision [or 2nd Section].

The remaining right-wing Captains change flanks.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Captains leading the 2 centre Subdivisions [or Sections] act as the Captains of the 2 centre Companies in (A). The right-centre Subdivision [or Section], as it advances, will incline to the left; to fill the space vacated by the Colour party.

Each of the other Captains will move across by the front, during the wheel, to the outward flank of his leading Subdivision [or Section], which he will lead in the Double Column.

(3) *On the word FORWARD—*

Each Wing moves as a Battalion advancing from a flank (*see* No. VIII. B.) in open Column: right-wing Captains giving *Left Subdivision* [or *No. 4 Section*]: *Right wheel*; left-wing Captains giving *Right Subdivision* [or *No. 1 Section*]: *Left wheel*; as they respectively arrive at the wheeling point of their Wing. The left-wing Captains give the word *Forward: By the left* to both Subdivisions [or Sections] at the completion of the 2nd wheel. *See Note.*

SUBALTERNS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The supernumerary rank closes up 2 paces.

All the Lieutenants, whether the advance is to be by Subdivisions or Sections, move to the rear of the centre of their Companies. If the advance is to be by Sections, the Ensigns move to the rear of the inner flank of the Sections they will respectively lead in the Double Column.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

Each Subdivision [or Section] leader moves across to its outward flank, by the front, during the wheel: and acts as above directed for the Captains of his Wing.

[If the movement is by Sections:—The right-wing Lieutenants and Ensigns lead their 2nd and 1st Sections respectively; those of the left-wing, their 3rd and 4th Sections respectively: the remaining Section of each Company being led by a Serjeant.]

THE COLOURS.

As in (A).

Note.—The *proper Left*, unless it is otherwise ordered, is always the directing flank in a Double Column: and all words of command intended for two Companies [Subdivisions, or Sections] aligned with each other in the Column, are given by the leader on that flank. After the completion of the 2nd wheel, therefore, right-wing leaders give no word.

SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

No. X.—*A Battalion formed in Line retreating from a Flank, in Open Column of Companies (Subdivisions or Sections).*

(F. E. III., Sec. 31, p. 143.)

[If the retreat is to be in rear of the Right of the Line, it will commence from the Left: and *vice versa*.]

(A) *By Companies.*

RETIRE BY
COMPANIES
FROM THE LEFT
IN REAR OF THE
RIGHT
(OR FROM THE
RIGHT IN REAR
OF THE LEFT).

FIELD OFFICERS.

On the Caution—

The Major of the Wing that will be in rear during the retreat, places himself in front of the Captain in whose rear the wheeling point is placed (see p. 201); and when the Company that first moved off completes its 2nd wheel, gives the proper direction to its Captain. [The 2nd wheels of all the Companies being completed, he will follow in his place on the reverse flank of the Column.]

The Major of the leading Wing, and the Adjutant: as in No. VIII.

CAPTAINS.

(1) If the Retreat is to be in rear of the Right:—

On the Caution—

The Captain of the left-flank Company gives No. — : *Right-about face. Q. March:* and as the men are taking the 3rd pace to the rear, *Left wheel.* When the Company has wheeled square, he gives *Forward: By the present left,* placing himself on that flank, and proceeding along the rear of the

Line till he reaches the left of the right-flank Company. He will then give *No. — : Right wheel*, at the same time changing his flank ; and when the Company has wheeled square, *Forward : By the present right*.

Each of the other Captains in succession from the Left (except the Captain of the right-flank Company) will give the same words, and act in like manner : taking care to face-about his Company in time to give it *Q. March* when the Company he is to follow is within 3 paces of his proper right flank.

The Captain of the right-flank Company, when No. 2 commences its 2nd wheel, changes his flank and gives *No. 1 : Right-about face. Q. March* ; the word *March* being given 3 paces before No. 2's wheel is completed.

(2) If the Retreat is to be in rear of the Left :—

All the Captains (except the Captain of the left-flank Company) change flanks on the *Caution* ; and their words will be *Right-about face,—Right wheel*,—and on reaching the right of the left-flank Company, *Left wheel* : the movement proceeding, in all other respects, as in (1).

SUBALTERNS.

On the Caution : The Officer on the left of the Line falls back into the supernumerary rank, which closes up 2 paces : and if the retreat commences from the Right, the Lieutenant of each (except the left-flank) Company changes his flank.

If the retreat commences from the Left, each Lieutenant (except the Lieut. of the right-flank Company, who changes with his Captain) changes flank during the 2nd wheel of his Company.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party moves independently as a Company. After completing the 2nd wheel, it will move up to the wheeling point, and mark time to gain its right position in the proper rear of the right- or left-centre Company.

(B) *By Subdivisions [or Sections].*

FIELD OFFICERS : as in (A).

CAPTAINS.

RETIRE BY
SUBDIVISIONS
[or SECTIONS]
FROM THE LEFT
IN REAR OF THE
RIGHT
(or FROM THE
RIGHT IN REAR
OF THE LEFT).

Each of the Captains proceeds as in (A), except that he will give the words *Right-about face* and *Q. March* to each of his Subdivisions [or Sections] in succession ; always himself leading that which steps off last, so as to be at the head of his Company when the Column is fronted : and that he will make his 2nd wheel on reaching the inner flank of the right- (or left-) flank *Subdivision* [or *Section*]. .

SUBALTERNS.

On the Caution : as in No. IX. (B), substituting the word 'retreat' for 'advance', and 'Column' for 'Double Column'.

As each Subdivision [or Section] gets the word *Q. March* from the Captain, its leader will move up on its inner flank and take command of it : giving *Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*.—*Forward. &c.*, as directed for the Captains.

[When the movement is by Sections :—If the retreat commences from the Left, the Lieutenants and Ensigns will lead their 3rd and 4th Sections respectively : if from the Right, their 2nd and 1st Sections respectively.]

See Note, page 103.

SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

No. XI.—*A Battalion formed in Line retreating from both Flanks in rear of the Centre, in Double Column of Companies (Subdivisions or Sections).*

(F. E. III., Sec. 31, p. 145.)

[The Coverers of the 2 centre Companies give points for the 2nd wheels. See p. 202.]

(A) *By Double Column of Companies.*

RETIRE BY COMPANIES FROM BOTH FLANKS IN REAR OF THE CENTRE.

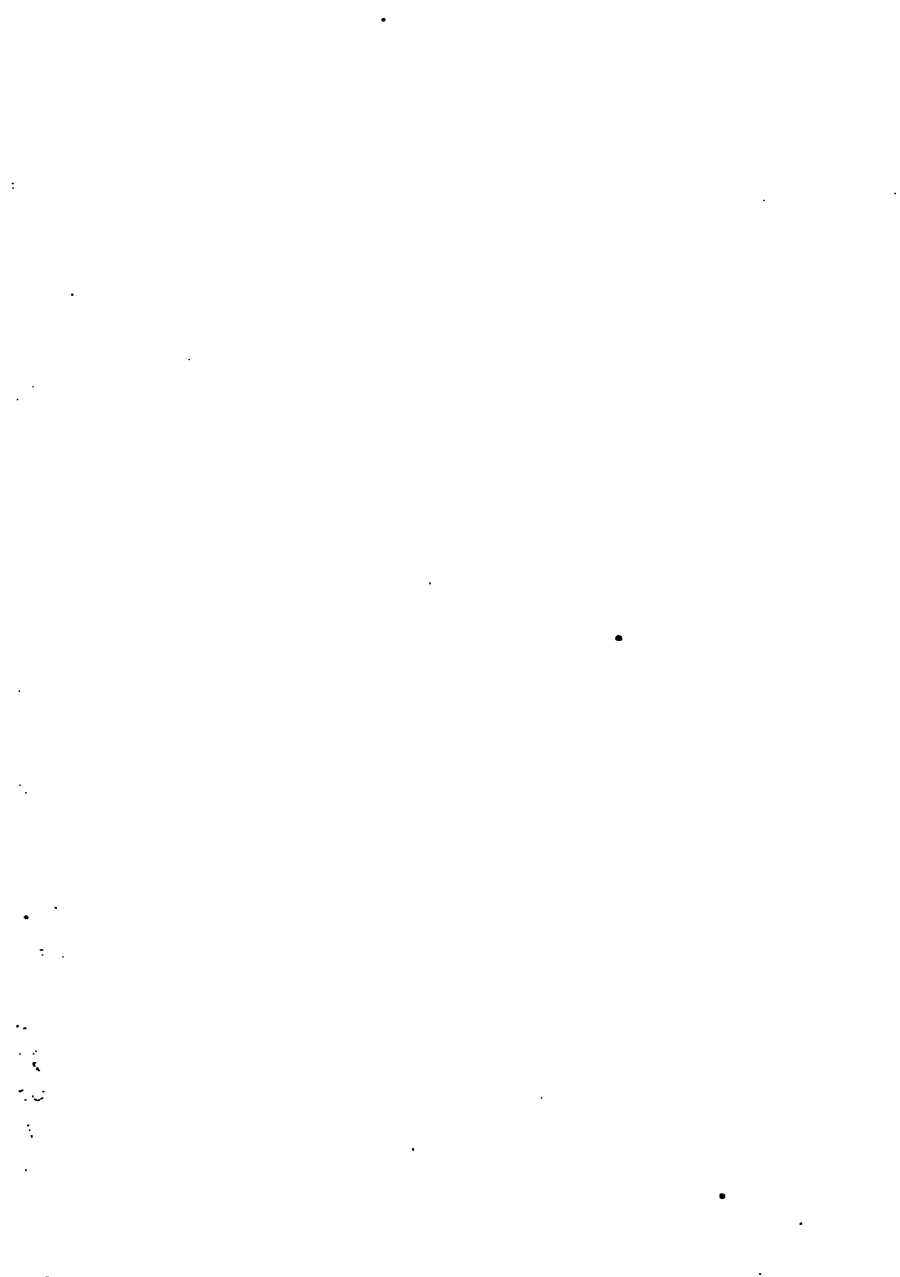
FIELD OFFICERS.

The Junior Major superintends the direction, as in open Column: see page 61. The Senior Major and Adjutant superintend the 2nd wheels of all the Companies, and then follow in rear of the Column.

CAPTAINS.

The right-wing Captains (except the Captain of the right-centre Company) change flanks on the *Caution*; and then, in succession from the Right, proceed as in the retreat by Companies from the Right in rear of the Left (see No. X.): except that they will make their 2nd wheel on reaching the right of the right-centre Company, and will not give *Forward* as their Companies complete that wheel.

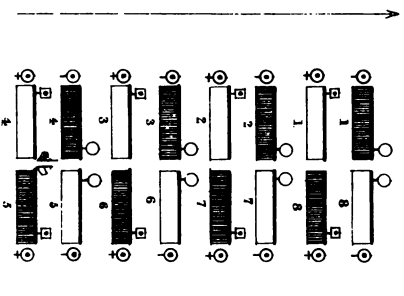
The left-wing Captains in succession from the Left (except the Captain of the left-centre Com-



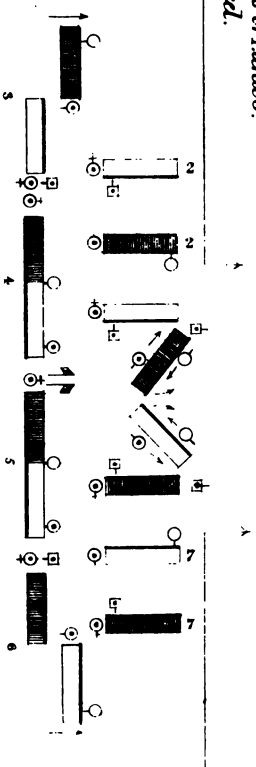
PART 2. BATTALION DRILL, No. XI. (B)

A Battalion in line retiring by double columns of subdivisions from both flanks in rear of the Centre

II. The double column retiring.



I. When the leading subdivisions of 1 and 8 are commencing the 2nd wheel.



FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 101

pany) proceed as in the retreat by Companies from the Left in rear of the Right (*see* No. X.): except that they will make their 2nd wheel on reaching the left of the left-*centre* Company. Their word *Forward: By the present right*, at the completion of the 2nd wheel, will apply both to their own Company and to that aligned with it in Double Column: *see* Note, p. 96.

The Captain of the left-*centre* Company changes his flank, and gives the 2 centre Companies *Right-about face* when the 2 Companies which will precede them in the Double Column commence their 2nd wheel: giving *Q. March* when the latter are 3 paces from the completion of the wheel.

The Captain of the right-*centre* Company will have no word of command to give.

[The right-*centre* Company will close on the left-*centre* as it moves off; to occupy the space vacated by the Colours.]

SUBALTERNS.

On the Caution: The Officer on the left of the Line falls into the supernumerary rank, which closes up 2 paces.

The Lieutenant of each right-wing (except the right-*centre*) Company changes his flank on the *Caution* and during the 2nd wheel: the left-wing Lieutenants (except the Lieutenant of the left-*centre* Company, who changes with his Captain) change during the 2nd wheel.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will face about with the 2 centre Companies, and then take 3 paces to the

proper rear : stepping off with those Companies when the left-centre Captain gives *Q. March*.

(B) *By Double Column of Subdivisions [or Sections]*.

RETIRE BY SUBDIVISIONS [or SECTIONS] FROM BOTH FLANKS IN REAR OF THE CENTRE.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (A) : substituting the words 'Subdivisions [or Sections]' for 'Companies'.

CAPTAINS.

The right-wing Captains (except the Captain of the right-centre Company) change flanks on the *Caution*; and, in succession from the Right, proceed as in the retreat by Subdivisions [or Sections] from the Right in rear of the Left (*see* No. X.) : except that they will make their 2nd wheel on reaching the right of the right-centre Subdivision [or Section], and will not give *Forward* when the Subdivision [or Section] each is leading completes that wheel.

The left-wing Captains in succession from the Left (except the Captain of the left-centre Company) proceed as in the retreat by Subdivisions [or Sections] in rear of the Right : except that they make their 2nd wheel on reaching the left of the left-centre Subdivision [or Section]. Their word *Forward: By the present right*, on the completion of the 2nd wheel, applies to both Subdivisions [or Sections].

The Captain of the left-centre Company changes his flank and gives the 2 centre Subdivisions [or Sections] *Right-about face, &c.*, as to the 2 centre Companies in (A).

[The right-centre Subdivision (or Section) will close on the left-centre as it moves off.]

FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 103

SUBALTERNS: as in No. X. (B), observing the additional directions given in this No. for the Captains of their Wing.

[If the movement is by Sections :—Right-wing Lieutenants and Ensigns lead their 3rd and 4th Sections respectively: those of the left Wing, their 2nd and 1st Sections respectively.]

THE COLOURS.

As in (A): substituting the words ‘Subdivisions [or Sections]’ for ‘Companies.’

Note.—The loss of distance which, in this and the preceding Movement, will necessarily result, will be corrected, at the discretion of the Battalion Commander, either by the leading Company [or the 2 leading Companies, Subdivisions, or Sections] stepping short or marking time: or by the leading Company [or the 2 leading Companies, Subdivisions, or Sections] moving on in quick time, and the remainder recovering their distance by doubling. If the former of these methods is to be adopted, the Battalion Commander will give *LEADING COMPANY* [or *TWO LEADING COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS)*]: *MARK TIME*, and subsequently *FORWARD* to the whole: if the latter, *LEADING COMPANY* [or *TWO LEADING COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS, or SECTIONS)*] *TO THE FRONT: REMAINING COMPANIES, DOUBLE:*—when the whole Battalion is in Column, or Double Column, as the case may be.

The retreat in rear of a flank, or of the Centre, may (if necessary) be effected by the Companies [or Subdivisions] facing, or forming fours, in the required direction, and so moving along the rear of the Line. In this case, the leader of each Company [or Subdivision], on reaching the inward flank of that in rear of which he is to retire, will halt till his rear file (or four) reaches him, and will then give *Rear turn*. *By the present* —. In Double Column, the word *By the present right* will be given by the proper left-wing leaders.

SECTION II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

No. XII.—*A Battalion in Line forming Open, Close, or Quarter-distance Column on any named Company.*

(F. E., III., SEC. 32, p. 147.)

N.B.—In the formation of Column Right in front, on whatever Company, the Captain of the named Company changes his flank on the *Caution*: when the Column is to be Left in front, he stands fast. If the Column is to be formed facing to the Rear, the above rule is reversed.

In all the following formations, each Company, after forming Fours, will disengage to the front or rear as may be necessary.

(A) *Column in front, or rear, of the Right-flank Company.*

OPEN (CLOSE or
QUARTER-DIS-
TANCE) COLUMN
IN FRONT (or
REAR) OF No. 1.

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
FOURS RIGHT.

Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior Major, on the *Caution*, moves to the future pivot flank of the named Company; placing himself in front or rear of the Serjeant giving the base point, according as Right or Left is to be in front: to superintend the covering of the Captains and Coverers. When the formation is completed, he gives STEADY, and moves to his proper place in Column.

The Junior Major and Adjutant move to their places in Column during the formation.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

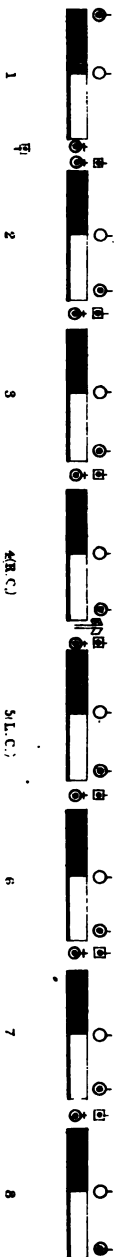
19

20

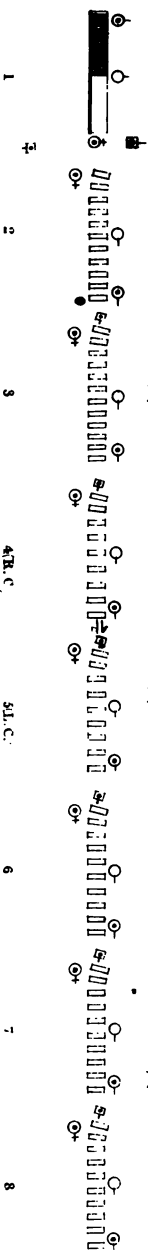
PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. No. XII. (4)

A Battalion in Line forming Column in Rear of the Right Flank Company

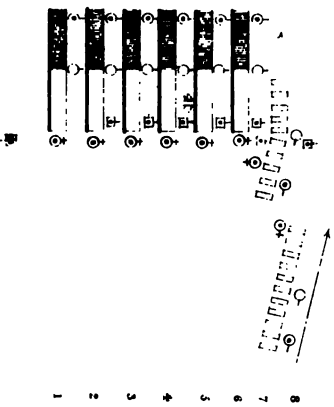
I. After the fraction



II. After the word "REAR COMPANIES: FOUR'S RIGHT."



III. When all the Companies but 2 have moved into column



CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of No. 1, if Right is to be in front, changes to his future pivot flank.

Each of the other Captains :—

(2) *On the word RIGHT—*

Places himself on the left of his leading four.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

If Right is to be in front :—Leads his Company to the Covering-serjeant who is marking its future pivot flank ; and on reaching him halts, allowing the men to move on past the rear of the Serjeant and in a line parallel to the Company of formation. As the four on the left of the Company reaches the Serjeant, the Captain gives *No. — : Halt, front : dress*, takes post on the exact spot then vacated by the Serjeant, and looks to his covering.

If Left is to be in front :—Leads his Company to the spot where its *reverse* flank will rest in the Column, and then (changing direction) leads it, in a line parallel to the Company of formation, on to the Covering-serjeant who is marking its future pivot flank. As the leading four reaches that Coverer, the Captain will give *No. — : Halt, front : dress : falling in* on the exact spot then vacated by the Serjeant, and looking to his covering.

SUBALTERNS.

On the Caution—

The Officer on the left of the Line falls back into the supernumerary rank, which closes up 2 paces : and the Lieutenant of the named

Company, if Right is to be in front, changes his flank.

The other Lieutenants move to their places during the formation.

THE COLOURS.

(1) *When the Companies form Fours*—The Colour party faces in the named direction.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—It moves independently by files to its place in Column: forming in single rank if the Column is formed at close distance. See page 67.

(B) *Column in front, or rear, of the Left-flank Company.*

— COLUMN IN
FRONT (or REAR)
OF No. —.

REMAINING
COMPANIES;
FOURS LEFT.

Q. *MARCH.*

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Junior Major acts as directed for the Senior Major in (A). The Senior Major and Adjutant move to their places in Column during the formation.

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution*—

The Captain of the named Company, as in (A).
The other Captains:—

(2) *On the word LEFT*—

Change flanks by the original front, and place themselves on the right of their leading fours.

(3) *On the word MARCH*—

If Right is to be in front, lead their Companies into Column as in (A) when *Left* is to be in front: if Left is to be in front, as in (A) when *Right* is to be in front.

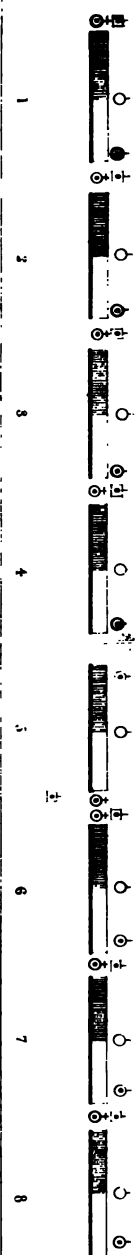
SUBALTERNS and COLOURS: as in (A).

PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. No XII. (C)

A Battalion in Line forming Column on the left Centre Company.
(Right to be in front).

107

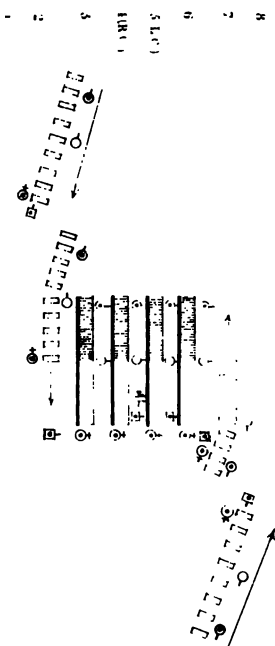
I. After the Caution.



II. After the word "REMP COMPANIES: FORMS INWARDS."



III. When all the Companies but 4 have formed in Column.



FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 107

(C) *Column on any central Company.*

— COLUMN,
RIGHT (or LEFT)
IN FRONT
ON No. —.

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
FOURS
INWARDS.

Q. MARCH.
STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior Major, when the Column is to be at close or quarter distance, will superintend the covering from the front; when it is to be at open distance, will place himself on the future pivot flank of the Company of formation: giving STEADY, in each case, when the formation is completed.

CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company: as in (A).
The Captains on the right of the named Company lead their Companies into Column as in (B): those on its left, as in (A).

SUBALTERNs and COLOURS: as in (A).

(D) *Column on any named Company facing to the Rear.*

— COLUMN
ON No. —
RIGHT (or LEFT)
IN FRONT, FACING
TO THE REAR.

(Suppose the formation
on a central Com-
pany) —

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
FOURS
OUTWARDS.

‡RIGHT (or LEFT)
COUNTER-
MARCH:
Q. MARCH.
STEADY.

N.B.—The Company of formation will always counter-march by *Files*, by command of its Captain: being faced so that the flank which will be the pivot in the Column may lead during the Countermarch. The Companies (if any) which move to the rear of the Line will, in this instance, counter-march round the rear rank.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in the same formations facing to the front.

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of the named Company, if Right is to be in front, gives *No. —*: *To the left face. Right Countermarch: Q. March*; if Left is to be in front, changes his flank and gives *No.—*: *To the right face. Left Countermarch: Q. March.*

‡ The remaining Companies will always be ordered to counter-march to the right if Right is to be in front: and *vice versa*.

When the leading file reaches the Covering-serjeant, the Captain gives *Halt, front: dress*, and replaces the Serjeant. (*See* No. XV. of PART I., page 46.)

(2) *On the word OUTWARDS—*

The Captains on the right and left of the named Company place themselves respectively on the left and right of their leading Fours.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

If *Right* is to be in front:—The Captains on the original right of the named Company lead their Companies into Column as directed in (A) for the Captains on the left of the named Company: those on the original left, as directed in (B) for the Captains on the right of the named Company: when *Right* is to be in front.

If *Left* is to be in front:—The Captains on the original right and left of the named Company act respectively as those on the left in (A) and on the right in (B): when *Left* is to be in front.

SUBALTERNS.

The Officer on the left of the Line falls, on the *Caution*, into the supernumerary rank. The Subalterns of the named Company proceed as in No. XV. of PART I. (p. 46): the remainder face, countermarch, and move into Column, with their respective Companies.

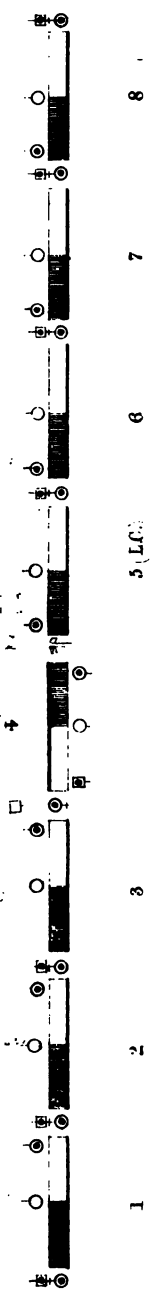
THE COLOURS.

Face and countermarch as a Company.

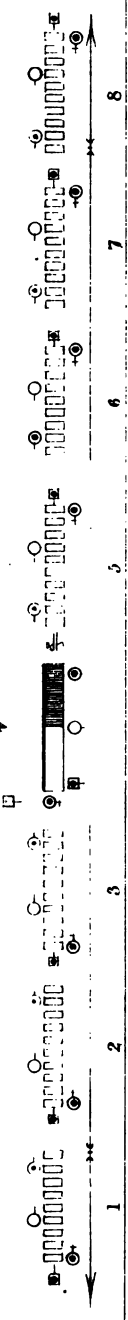
✚ In the *Plate* illustrating this movement, the Company of formation is (on account of the difficulty of shewing the Countermarch by files on so reduced a scale) represented as having *completed* its Countermarch on the *Caution*, instead of as commencing it.

Drill No. III (a) Forming Column from Line on a central Company (No. 4), and Raising to the Rear.

I. After the Caution:



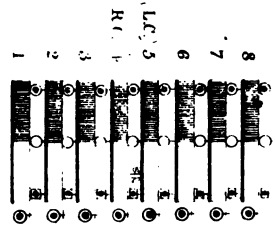
II. After the word "FOURS OUTWARDS":



III. During the formation:



IV. The Movement completed.



FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE. 109

Double Columns of Companies or Subdivisions may be formed from Line on the 2 centre Companies or Subdivisions, in the same manner as single Columns are formed. If the Column is to be one of Subdivisions, the leader of each Subdivision acts as above explained for Captains: the senior supernumerary Serjeant of each Company taking up the covering and distance for its rear Subdivision. See (4) p. 83.

Note.—When a Company moving in Fours is fronted, there will always be one file to come up on its left flank. In moving, therefore, from the Left on a pivot point marking where the left of the Company will rest, the word *Halt, front* should not be given till the four on the left of the Company has passed the point one pace. Similarly, in moving from the Right on a pivot point marking where the left of the Company will rest, the word *Halt, front* should be given one pace before the leading four reaches the point.

SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XIII.—*Forming Close or Quarter-distance Column from any more open Column.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 12, p. 116.)

(a)
THE COLUMN
WILL CLOSE TO
(or TO QUARTER
DISTANCE ON)
THE FRONT.

Q. MARCH.
STEADY.

(b)
THE COLUMN
WILL CLOSE TO
(or TO QUARTER
DISTANCE ON)
THE REAR
[or ON (or TO
QUARTER
DISTANCE ON)
No. —].

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
[or COMPANIES
IN FRONT:]
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

Q. MARCH.
STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

A Field-officer will superintend the Captains' covering, from the Battalion point of *appui*: and, the formation being completed, will give STEADY and move to his place.

CAPTAINS.

The named Company stands fast.

(a) If the closing is on the *front* Company†: the Captain of each of the other Companies in succession will give No. — : *Halt: dress*, as he comes up to the named distance.

(b) If the closing is on the *rear*, or any *central*, Company: the Captain of each Company that has been faced-about will give No. — : *Halt, front: dress*, as he comes up to the named distance; the remainder giving the same word as in (a).

† If the command *CLOSE TO THE FRONT* is given while the Column is *on the March*, the Captain of the leading Company immediately gives No. — : *Halt: dress*.

If a Column on the March is cautioned to close to the Front ON THE MARCH:—The leading Company continues its march: the remainder will get the word *DOUBLE*; the Captain of each in succession giving *No.* —: *Quick*, as it comes up to the named distance.

SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XIV.—*A Close or Quarter - distance Column opening from the Front, the Rear, or any named Company.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 13, p. 118.)

[To calculate distance for Files, see Introductory Observations (2) page 1.]

(A) *Opening from the Front.*

1. From the Halt.

(From the Halt.)
OPEN OUT TO
QUARTER (or
WHEELING)
DISTANCE FROM
THE FRONT.

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

Q. MARCH.
STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

A Field-officer will superintend the Captains' covering, from the Battalion point of *appui*: as in No. XIII.

CAPTAINS.

The front Company stands fast.

On the word MARCH—

The remainder step off; the Captain of the rear Company marching on any point at arm's length from the rear Battalion *aide*.

The Captain of the 2nd Company will count his paces, and, having gained the named distance, will give his Company No. — : *Halt, front : dress*; looking to his covering when fronted.

Each of the other Captains will begin counting

his paces when the Company in his present rear gets *Halt*: and will proceed as above.

[If the ground is rough, the distance for each Company may be marked by its Covering-serjeant (*see* p. 206): the Company being halted and fronted when in line with him.]

2. If the Column is *on the March*, and the caution to open out is followed by the command **REMAINING COMPANIES: MARK TIME**:—The leading Company continues its march: and the Captain of each of the others in succession gives *No. —: Forward* when he has marked time long enough to have acquired the named distance from the Company in his front.

[A halted Column may also open out by the **ADVANCE BY SUCCESSIVE COMPANIES FROM THE FRONT**: the leading Company first marching off by the word of the Battalion Commander, and the remainder following in succession (by the word of their Captains) as they acquire the ordered distance. Or, the Column may be faced about, and open out in like manner, commencing with the rear Company.]

(B) *Opening from the Rear.*

1. From the Halt.

(*From the Halt.*)
**OPEN OUT TO
QUARTER (or
WHEELING) DIS-
TANCE FROM
THE REAR.**

FIELD OFFICERS: as in (A).

CAPTAINS.

The rear Company will stand fast.

**REMAINING
COMPANIES:
Q. MARCH.**

On the word MARCH—

STEADY,

The remainder step off: the Captain of the leading Company marching on any point at arm's length from the front Battalion *aide*.

The Captain of the rear Company calls out the number of the Company next in his front, as a caution; and when it has gained its proper distance, gives *Halt*.

Each of the other Captains in succession will act in like manner; and will then face to the right-about† to correct his covering on the base points, front, and give *Dress* to his own Company.

2. If the Caution to open out is given when the Column is *on the March*:—The Captain of the rear Company will immediately give it *No. —*: *Halt, dress*: and the movement will proceed as above.

† The sword is *not* to be brought to the 'recover'.

(C) *Opening from a Central Company.*

From the Halt.

(From the Halt.)
OPEN OUT TO
QUARTER (or
WHEELING)
DISTANCE FROM
No. —.

FIELD OFFICERS; as in (A).

CAPTAINS.

COMPANIES IN
REAR: RIGHT-
ABOUT FACE.
Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

The Captain of the named Company, who will be the point of *appui* for the Battalion, will act as the Captain of the rear Company in (B).

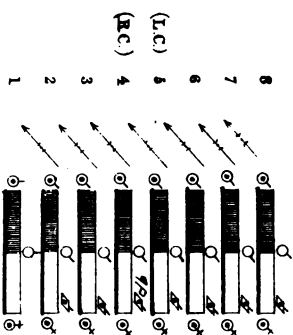
The Captains in front of the named Company act as in (B): those in rear, as in (A).

For Columns closing on, or opening out from, any named Company, while taking ground to a flank by Fours: see page 126.

PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. No IX

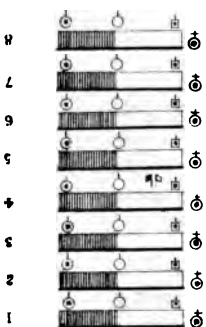
When a $\frac{1}{2}$ dist Column halted wheels to the left, on a fixed pivot.

I. After the Caution.



C. S. or I.

II. The Wheel completed.



W.D.M. 1897.

Vincent Brooks Ltd

SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XV.—*A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, wheeling on a fixed or moveable pivot*
(F. E. III., Sec. 16, p. 124.)

(A) *On a Fixed pivot.*

(Suppose Right in front.)

COLUMN: LEFT
[or RIGHT] WHEEL.

Q. (or D.) MARCH.

COLUMN:
HALT.

[*On the Caution*—If the wheel is to the pivot flank, the left-hand front-rank man; if to the reverse flank, the right-hand front-rank man; of the leading Company, becomes the pivot-man of the Column: and faces in the named direction; his rear-rank man uncovering.]

FIELD OFFICERS.

During the wheel:—The Major of the leading Wing places himself on the reverse flank of the leading Company, to regulate its pace: the Major of the rear Wing places himself in rear of the reverse flank of the rear Company, to see that the outer files cover. The Adjutant sees that the files close up to the leading files.

[The Major of the leading Wing will cover the Captains from the front when the Column halts.]

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the word WHEEL*—

Each Captain (except the Captain of the leading Company) makes a half face to the wheeling flank, with his Company.

(2) *On the word MARCH*—

The Captain of the leading Company, if the

† The half-face to the wheeling flank was first introduced, into the Austrian Règlement, by the Archduke Charles, in 1807.

wheel is to the reverse flank, wheels with his Company; if to the pivot flank, acquires his new front by moving back during the wheel.

The other Captains wheel with their Companies: each circling round, and covering on the Captain in his front. (*See page 84.*)

SUBALTERNS.

On the word WHEEL—

If the wheel is to the pivot flank, the Lieutenants move up on the reverse flanks of their Companies: resuming their places at the word *HALT*.

(B) *On a Moveable pivot.*

COLUMN: LEFT
[or **RIGHT**]
WHEEL.

COLUMN:
FORWARD.

The wheel is made on the same principle as that on a fixed pivot: the pivot man of the Column moving with very short paces round the wheeling point, and keeping his shoulders square with his Company; and each Company in rear making a half *turn* to the wheeling flank.

The Major of the rear Wing will cover the Captains from the rear, when the Column moves forward at the completion of the wheel.

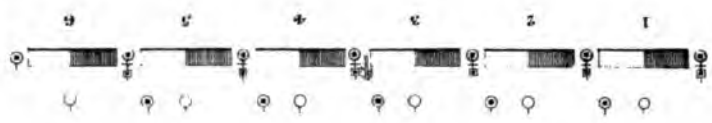
If the wheel is to the pivot flank, the Lieutenants fall back to their places in rear on the word *FORWARD*.

[For a Column wheeling while taking ground to a flank: see page 126.]

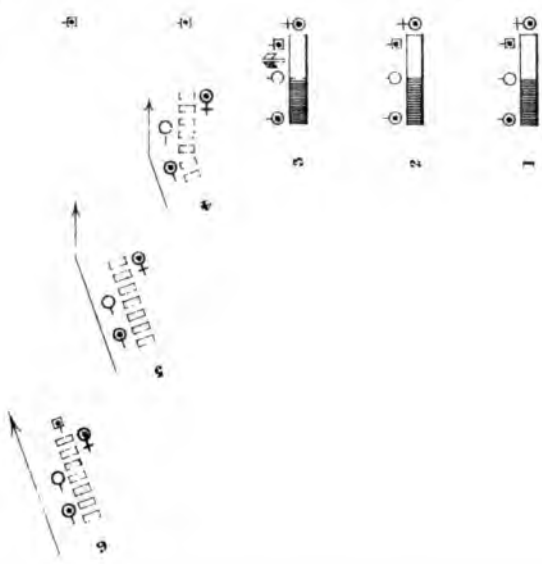
N.B.—During the wheel (either on a fixed or moveable pivot) the outward flank directs. The front Company wheels as usual, but with much shorter paces; each man of the remaining Companies moves round on the circumference of a circle of which the pivot man of the Column is the centre. The files on the outward flank of each Company in rear must carefully preserve their distances, and retain their original relative position to, and covering

are open column, march at right angles to the new alignment.

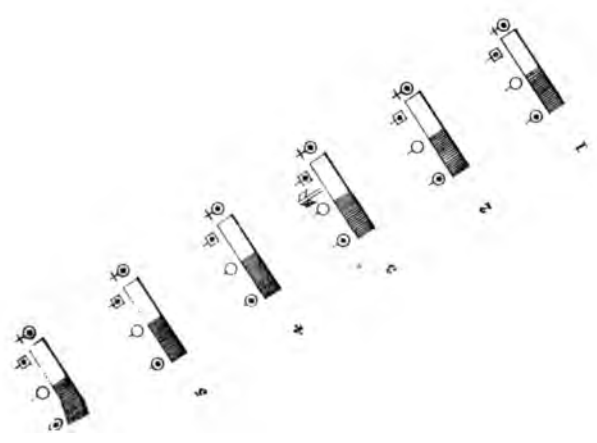
III. The column wheeled to the left into line.



II. When 3 of the companies have moved, and the rem. are moving (FOUR LEFT) into column at right angles to the new alignment.



I. The open column, having arrived at about wheeling distance from the point of formation, is halted.



on, the leading Company : the remainder conforming to them ; and the men nearest the pivot flank keeping up the inward shoulder at the commencement of the wheel, so as to gain sufficient ground to the flank, and to keep their proper distance.

A Double Column, when closed to quarter or close distance, may wheel as a single Column.

AN OPEN COLUMN may change Direction by the successive wheel of its Companies on moveable pivots round the same point.

Should the wheel be to the reverse flank, each Lieutenant will move up on that flank of his Company and lead during the change of direction : retaining the position occupied by the reverse flank when the Column was marching by the pivot flank ; so that when *Forward* is given at the completion of the wheel, the pivot flanks may still be in line. Weak Companies will have to march a little past the wheeling point before they wheel : strong Companies will wheel a little before they reach it.

If the change of Direction is to bring the pivot flank of the Column on an Alignment, *preparatory to forming Line* :

—The Captain of the leading Company, on entering the alignment, must march steadily on the points of Formation ; the other Captains, as they enter the alignment, covering on him and the base point. If the Column is halted before all the Companies have changed their direction into the alignment, the rear Companies will move into the alignment by the flank march of Fours (as explained in the following paragraph).

¶ *An Open Column moving into an Alignment by the flank march of Fours.*

The Column having been marched up, obliquely, to within a few paces of wheeling distance

from that point in the new alignment where the outward flank of its leading Company will rest when in Line, all the Companies will (on the Battalion Commander's word *MARCH ON YOUR COVERERS*) move across into the alignment by Fours. The Covering-serjeant of each Company will run out to mark where its pivot flank will rest in the alignment (*see* p. 208): the Captain as he comes up to the Coverer, giving the word *No — : Halt, front : dress.*

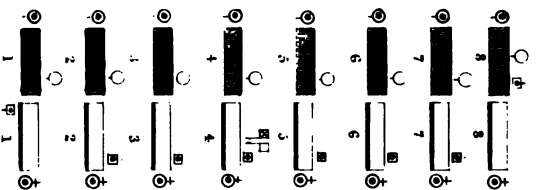
The Column is then ready to be wheeled into Line.

(F. E., p. 123.)

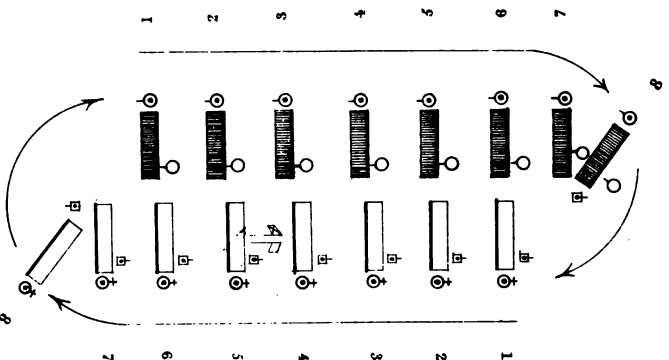
PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. No. XVI.

A 1/2 dist. column (right in front) changing front to the rear by the wheel & countermarch of subdivisions round the centre (from the hall.)

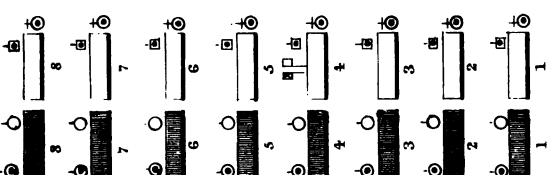
I. After the Command "RIGHT SUBDIVISIONS, RIGHT ABOUTFACE."



II. The Countermarch commencing.



III. The movement completed.



SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XVI. — *A Close or Quarter-distance Column countermarching by the wheel of Subdivisions round the Centre.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 18, p. 127.)

N.B.—In this Countermarch, the front of the Column will be changed to the original rear; the order of the Companies, and consequently the pivot flank, remaining unchanged. The touch will be to the inward flanks.

(A) *From the Halt.*

[*On the Caution*—The Coverers of the front and rear Companies will give the points on which the Subdivisions will wheel the half circle. See p. 207.]

COUNTERMARCH
BY SUBDIVISIONS
ROUND THE
CENTRE.

(Suppose Right in
front)—

RIGHT
SUBDIVISIONS:
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

Q. (or D.) MARCH.

HALT; FRONT:
DRESS.

FIELD OFFICERS.

If Right is in front: The Senior Major superintends the wheels of the left Subdivisions; the Junior, the wheels of the right: if Left is in front, *vice versâ*. The Adjutant sees that the wheeling points are correctly placed.

(Suppose Right in front.)

CAPTAINS.

On the word MARCH—

The Captain of the leading Company wheels with his left Subdivision: stepping short till it has completed the half circle, when he will advance at full pace. Each of the other Captains, on reaching the wheeling point, acts in like manner.

SUBALTERNS.

(1) *On the word FACE—*

The Lieutenants place themselves on the outward flanks of their reverse (right) Subdivisions.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Lieutenant of the rear Company wheels with its right Subdivision, as explained for the Captain of the leading Company. The other Lieutenants in succession, on reaching the wheeling point, act in like manner.

(3) *On the word FRONT: DRESS—*

The reverse Subdivisions front: the Lieutenants falling back into their proper places in Column.

The whole then dress by the pivot flank.

[If Left is in front, the *left* Subdivisions will receive the word *RIGHT-ABOUT FACE*.]

(B) *On the March.*

COUNTERMARCH
BY SUBDIVISIONS
ROUND THE
CENTRE.

(Suppose Right in
front.)—

RIGHT
SUBDIVISIONS:
RIGHT-ABOUT
TURN.

‡FRONT TURN.

The movement proceeds as when done from the Halt: the reverse Subdivisions turning instead of facing. The Lieutenants fall back into their places in rear at the word *FRONT TURN*.

‡Turning about occupies 3 paces (see p. 17): the word *TURN* will therefore be given 4 paces before the two Subdivisions of each Company become aligned, so that at the 4th pace they may move on together in the new direction.

[If Left is in front, the *left* Subdivisions will receive the word *LEFT-ABOUT TURN*.]

A Double Column will countermarch in the manner above described for a single Column.

For Columns countermarching by Files or Ranks:
see ¶ 2, page 84.

100

101

102

103

104

105

106

107

108

109

110

111

112

113

114

115

116

117

118

119

120

121

122

123

124

125

126

127

128

129

130

131

132

133

134

135

136

137

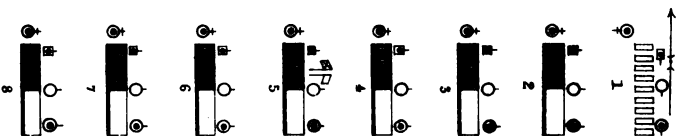
138

139

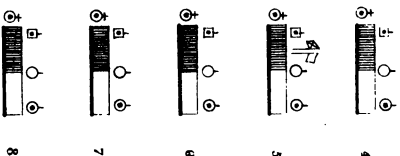
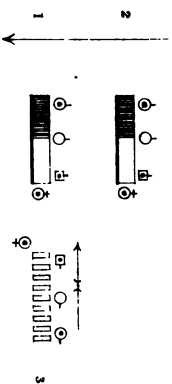
140

PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. N^o XXV. 1st A Column (Left in front) bringing its rear Company to the front

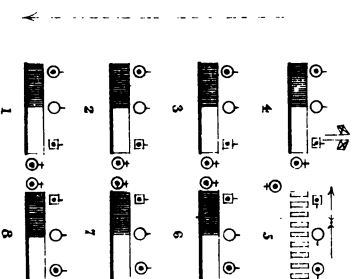
I. When N^o 1 has got the word "Pours Right".



II. When 1 and 2 are in the new column, and N^o 3 has formed 4th to the right.



III. When 1 2 3. and 4 are in the new column, 5 is about to get the word "Quick march"



SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XVII.⁽¹⁾—*Changing the Order of a Column by the successive march of the rear Companies to the Front.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 20, p. 129.)

Note.—When the rear Company of a Column is brought to the front (in which case the pivot flank will necessarily be changed), each Company will move out of the old Column by its present pivot flank.

BY SUCCESSIVE
COMPANIES:
REAR WING TO
THE FRONT.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major of the Wing that is to be brought up follows in rear of the rear-but-one Company of the old Column. The other Major and Adjutant follow in their proper places on the reverse flank of the new Column.

CAPTAINS.

(Suppose Right in front.)

⁽¹⁾ *On the word FRONT—*

The Captain of the rear Company will take one pace to his front, face to the right-about, and give *No. — : Fours left. Q. March*: standing fast, and allowing the men to move past him. When the Company is clear of the Column, he will give *Front turn. By the right*: and will fall in on that flank and lead on to the front, passing close along the pivot flanks of the other Companies.

The Captain of the next Company, and each of the other Captains in succession, as the flank

of the Company which stood immediately in his rear in the old Column is approaching him, will take one pace to his front, face to the right-about, and give *No. — : Fours left*. As that Company passes him, he will give *Q. March*, and will proceed as above directed for the Captain of the rear Company.

[When *Left* is in front, the rear Company and each of the others in succession will form *Fours* to the *right*, and proceed as above directed.]

SUBALTERNS.

The Lieutenant of each Company changes his flank when its Captain gives *Front turn*.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party moves out of the old Column independently, in file : and follows in its proper place in rear of the leading centre Company.

of the Company which stood immediately in his rear in the old Column is approaching him, will take one pace to his front, face to the right-about, and give *No. — : Fours left*. As that Company passes him, he will give *Q. March*, and will proceed as above directed for the Captain of the rear Company.

[When *Left* is in front, the rear Company and each of the others in succession will form *Fours* to the *right*, and proceed as above directed.]

SUBALTERNS.

The Lieutenant of each Company changes his flank when its Captain gives *Front turn*.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party moves out of the old Column independently, in file : and follows in its proper place in rear of the leading centre Company.

of the Company which stood immediately in his rear in the old Column is approaching him, will take one pace to his front, face to the right-about, and give *No. — : Fours left*. As that Company passes him, he will give *Q. March*, and will proceed as above directed for the Captain of the rear Company.

[When Left is in front, the rear Company and each of the others in succession will form *Fours* to the *right*, and proceed as above directed.]

SUBALTERNS.

The Lieutenant of each Company changes his flank when its Captain gives *Front turn*.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party moves out of the old Column independently, in file : and follows in its proper place in rear of the leading centre Company.

of the Company which stood immediately in his rear in the old Column is approaching him, will take one pace to his front, face to the right-about, and give *No. — : Fours left*. As that Company passes him, he will give *Q. March*, and will proceed as above directed for the Captain of the rear Company.

[When *Left* is in front, the rear Company and each of the others in succession will form *Fours* to the *right*, and proceed as above directed.]

SUBALTERNS.

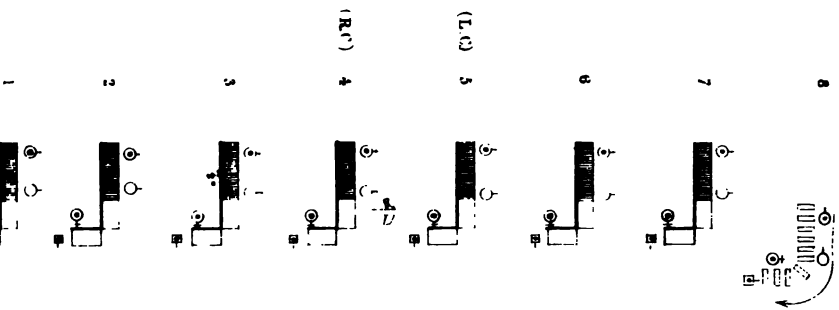
The Lieutenant of each Company changes his flank when its Captain gives *Front turn*.

THE COLOURS.

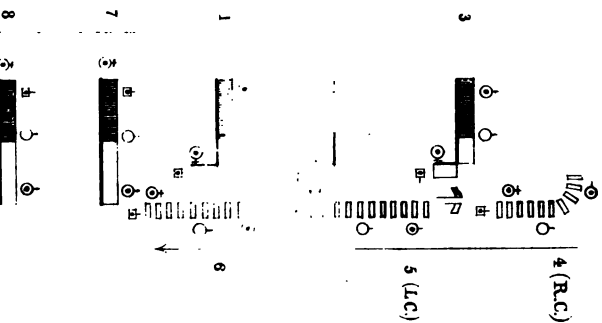
The Colour party moves out of the old Column independently, in file : and follows in its proper place in rear of the leading centre Company.

PART 4. BATTALION DRILL - V.V.I.V.L. 4 column, right in front, bringing us rear Company to the front, on a parade.

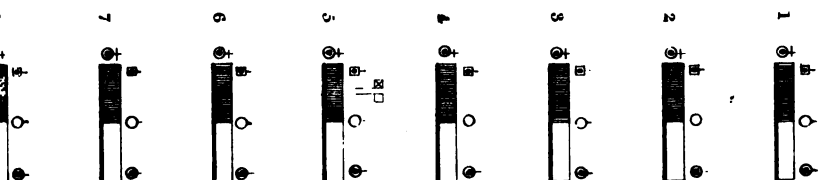
I. After the word, "Q. MARCH."



II. When 7 and 8 are formed in the new column; and 6 is about to "Front form Company."



III. The movement completed



SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XVII.⁽²⁾—*Changing the Order of an Open, Half-, or Quarter-distance Column on a Road.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 21, p. 130.)

(*Suppose Right in front*)—

BY FOURS FROM
THE LEFT: REAR
WING TO THE
FRONT.

4th SECTIONS,
RIGHT WHEEL:
Q. MARCH.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in No. XVII.⁽¹⁾

CAPTAINS.

(*Suppose Right in front.*)

On the word FRONT—

The Captain of the rear Company takes one pace to his front, faces to the right-about, and gives *No. —: Fours left. Right wheel*: at the same time placing himself on the right of his leading four.

On the word MARCH—

The rear Company (without any further command from its Captain) steps off, wheels to the right, and moves straight to the front along the rear ranks of the 4th Sections of the other Companies; till it clears the front of the old Column. The Captain then gives *No. —: Front form Company*, (moving across to meet the right flank: see p. 40): and when Company is formed, falls in, giving *Forward: By the right*, and leading straight to the front.

The Captain of each of the remaining Companies wheels inwards with his 4th Section; and as

it completes the quarter circle, gives *No. 4 Section : Halt.*

The Captain of the Company which stood next to the rear one in the old Column, and each of the other Captains in succession, will glance over his inward shoulder, and give *No. — : Fours left : Q. March*, in time to follow the Company in whose rear he is to march, without loss of distance : he will then proceed as directed for the Captain of the rear Company. The Captain of the front Company of the old Column may give his word *Front form Company* as soon as his leading four has gained the left of the Road.

[A Column Left in front will bring its rear Companies to the front by Fours from the *right*, in like manner : the 1st Sections being wheeled inwards.]

SUBALTERNS.

As each Company gets the word *Front form Company*, its Lieutenant will move across to his place in rear of the reverse flank.

THE COLOURS.

On the word MARCH—The Colour party will move to the rear of the 3rd Section of the right-centre, or the 2nd Section of the left-centre, Company ; and will follow in rear of the latter or the former Company when it passes : according as the old Column was Right or Left in front.

The Battalion may, if required, move on in Fours instead of forming Companies.

[The rear Wing may be brought to the front by Sections instead of Fours : in which case, however, it will be necessary to wheel up the pivot *Subdivisions*.]

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

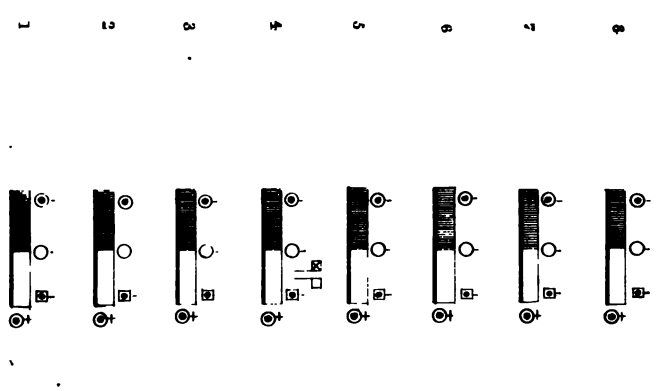
27

28

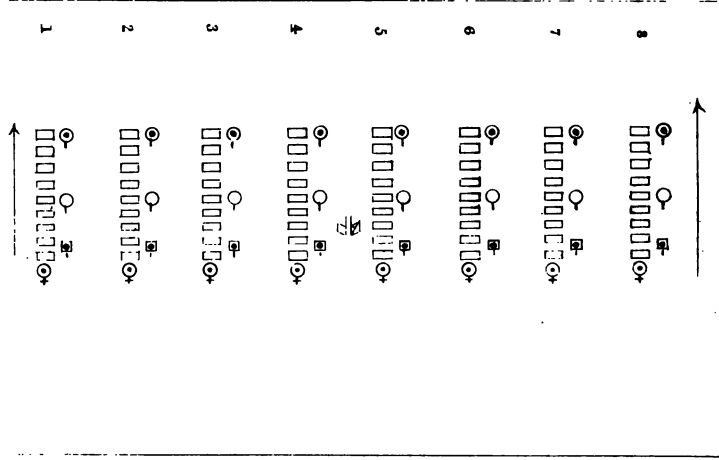
29

30

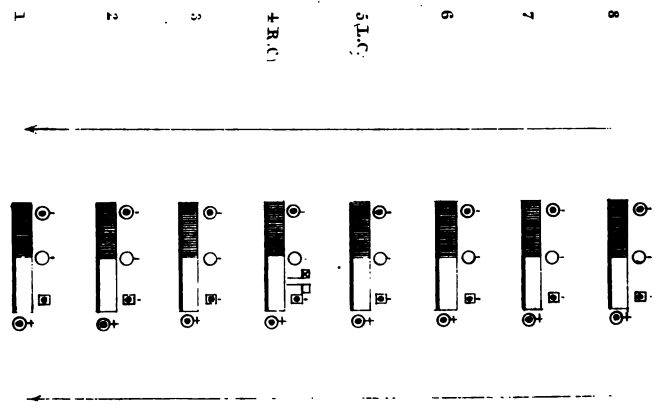
III. After the word "HALT FRONT"



II. After the word "FOURS RIGHT"



I. The Column advancing



Note. The Captains are supposed not to be ordered to change flanks.

SECTION III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

No. XVIII.—*A Column taking ground to a Flank in Fours : in Subdivisions (or Sections) : or by Echellon of Sections.*

(F. E. III., SECS. 22, 23, p. 131.)

(A) *By Fours.*

TAKE GROUND
TO THE RIGHT (or
LEFT) IN FOURS.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in No. V., page 77.

FOURS RIGHT
(or LEFT).

CAPTAINS.

Captains do not change flanks if ground is taken to the reverse flank, unless ordered.

[Q. MARCH.]

[No.—:
COMPANY OF
DIRECTION.]

SUBALTERNs.

If ground is taken to the reverse flank, and the Captains are not ordered to change flanks, the Lieutenant of each Company moves up to lead.

Each Company leader (Captain or Lieutenant as the case may be) marches on that flank of its leading four which is nearest to the Company of direction : keeping his distance from, and dressing upon, that Company. When no Company of direction is named, the leading Company of the Column will direct.

The Column, if at open distance, may form LINE as explained in No. V.

N.B.—If it be required to form SQUARE:—The Column, if at quarter distance, will turn to the front and then form Square on the leading Company ; if at open distance, will form Square on the Centre : as described in No. XXX.

(F. E., p. 176.)

¶ *A Column CLOSING AND OPENING OUT during the Flank March by Fours.*

- (1) A Column, at quarter (or open) distance, while taking ground to a flank by fours, may be ordered to *CLOSE* on (or to quarter distance on) any named Company. That Company continues moving on at a short pace: the leading four of each of the other Companies wheels one-eighth of a circle inwards (the rest of the Company following), till the required distance is gained, when it resumes the original direction — stepping short till *FORWARD* is given to the whole Column. The Column may *OPEN OUT* in like manner: the remaining Companies wheeling one-eighth of a circle outwards. In both cases, Company leaders (if not already there) will change to that flank of their leading four which is nearest the Company to, or from, which the closing is made.

[The Column, when closed to close or quarter distance, may *wheel* in any direction, on the principles laid down in No. XV. The Officer leading each Company will place himself (if not already there) on that flank of the leading four which is nearest the pivot: so that he may be able to keep his distance from that point.]

If a further reduction of Front is required:—The right Companies (if Right is in front) may mark time; the left Companies moving on and closing on the centre, the right following: if Left is in front, *vice versâ*. Also, one Wing may move on, the other following: or, one of the flank Companies may move on in fours; the remainder following in succession. Before the Column is again opened out, the leading Companies must mark time (or halt) while the others resume their places: or, the rear Companies may be ordered to double.

- (2) The Companies, on open ground, may also close and open out by the command BY THE DIAGONAL MARCH, CLOSE ON (or OPEN OUT FROM) No.—. *REMAINING COMPANIES: INWARDS (or OUTWARDS) HALF TURN*: each Company leader giving No. —: *Right (or Left) half turn*, when the proper distance is acquired.

(F. E. pp. 126, 132–135.)

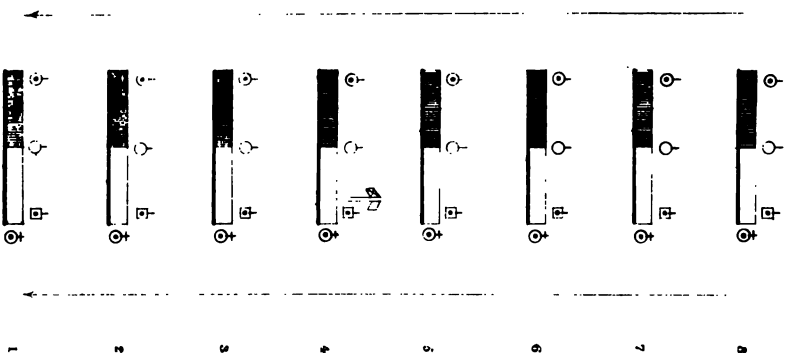
(B) *By Subdivisions or Sections.*

[An Open Column can take ground to a flank either by Subdivisions or Sections: a Quarter-distance Column by

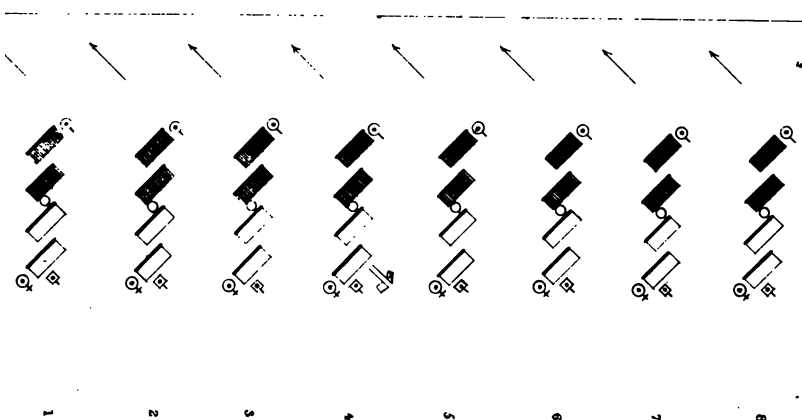
PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. N° XVIII. (B)

An Open Column taking ground to the Right by the Echelon march of Sections.

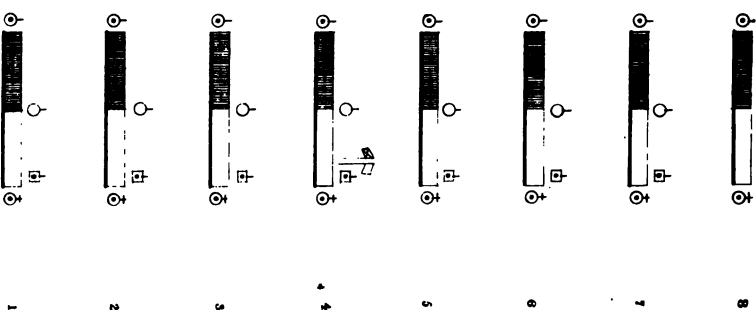
III. After the word "REFORM COLUMN."



II. When the Sections having wheeled (on the move) 4 paces, have got "FORWARD."



I. After the Caution. (Captains not ordered to change flank)



Sections only. This movement is to be considered an exceptional one.]

TAKE GROUND
TO THE RIGHT
(or LEFT) IN
SUBDIVISIONS
[or SECTIONS].

SUBDIVISIONS
[or SECTIONS]:
RIGHT (or LEFT)
WHEEL.

(When square)—
FORWARD.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior or Junior Major, according as ground is taken to the right or left, superintends the direction.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS—

When the movement is from open Column: march in their usual places in Column of Subdivisions or Sections, as the case may be. See pp. 9, 31.

When the movement is by Sections from *quarter-distance* Column:—The Captain and other Section leaders of the leading Company of the Column march in their proper places on the pivot flanks of their Sections; but the Section leaders of all the remaining Companies will necessarily march in rear of their Sections.

(C) *By the Echelon March of Sections.*

[This movement is used to take ground at once to the front and to a flank: it is inapplicable to a Column formed at close distance.]

TAKE GROUND
TO THE RIGHT
(or LEFT) IN
ECHELLON.

(If at the Halt)
ON THE MOVE:
BY SECTIONS
RIGHT (or LEFT)
WHEEL.

Q. MARCH.

(When in echelon)—
FORWARD.

FIELD OFFICERS: as in (B).

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS: proceed as directed in No. XI. of PART I. (p. 35.): the leader of the front Company taking up points, in the diagonal direction, to march on; and each leader in rear covering on the leading flank of the front Company, and preserving his distance from the Company next in his front when in Column.

The Colour party moves as a Section.

A Column may also take ground to the front and to a flank, BY THE DIAGONAL MARCH. (See page 18.)

SECTION IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

No. XIX.—*Wheeling into Line from Open Column.*

(F. E. III., SEC. 2, p. 99.)

(A) *From the Halt.*

[On the word *LINE*—The pivot man of each Company faces into the named direction, raising his right arm till the Company that has wheeled up to him gets *Eyes front*. The Coverer of the leading Company, only, runs out.]

LEFT (or RIGHT)
WHEEL INTO
LINE.
STEADY.
Q. *MARCH.*

FIELD OFFICERS.

If the Column is Right in front, the Junior Major; if Left in front, the Senior Major; will dress the pivots from the rear of the Column: giving the word *STEADY* when they are in line. The Major not occupied in correcting the points, and the Adjutant, will move to their places in Line during the formation.

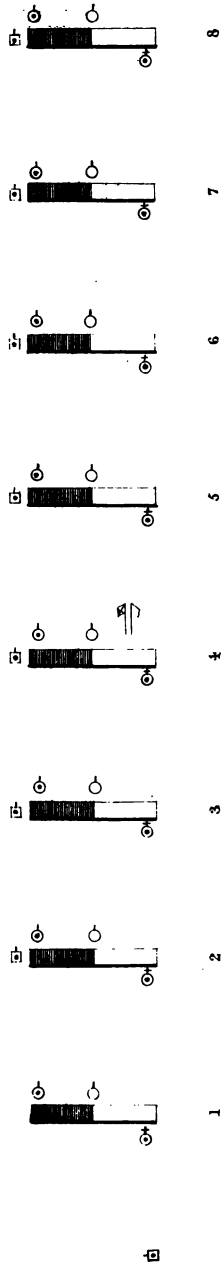
CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS.

Proceed as explained in the corresponding No. (V.) of PART I., p. 21.

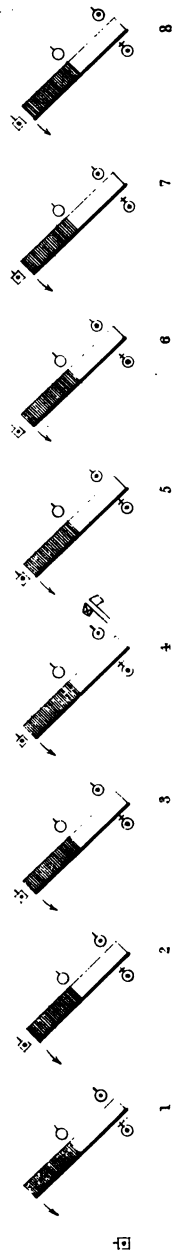
Each Captain should call out the number of his Company in time to give *Halt* when its wheeling flank is 2 paces from the standing flank of the Company to which it is wheeling up: so that, at the word *Dress*, the dressing may be forward.

PART 2. BATTALION DRILL, No XIX (A) An open Column, right in front, wheeling into Line.

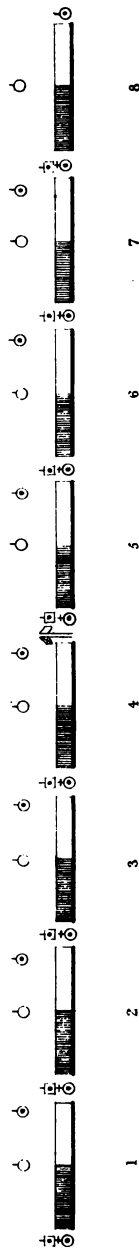
I. After the Caution "LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE."



II. During the Wheel.



III. In Line.



FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN. 129

The Captain of the left-centre or right-centre Company, according as the Column was Right or Left in front, will dress the Colour party with his own men.

THE COLOURS.

The Colours wheel up into Line between the 2 centre Companies.

If distances are lost in the wheel into Line, they will be corrected as explained at page 63.

[A Column *Left* in front would get the word RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE: each Captain dressing his Company, when in Line, from the *right*. See p. 22.]

(B) *On Moveable pivots.*

**LEFT
(or RIGHT)
WHEEL INTO
LINE.**

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS : as in PART I., No. V.,
page 22.

FORWARD. COLOURS : as in (A).

When a Column of *Subdivisions* or *Sections* wheels into Line, each Company will proceed as directed in No. X. of PART I. [The Subdivisions (or Sections) of each Company, when dressing, will feel to the pivot file of the *Company*; that file, only, keeping its ground.]

SECTION IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM
COLUMN.

No. XX.—*Forming Line to the Front from
Open Column, on any named Company.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 38, p. 152.)

(A) *From the Halt.*

(a) Line on the Leading Company.

[The leading Company will stand fast. The remainder will be wheeled backwards on their right or left, according as the Column is Right or Left in front. Pivot men face as in No. VII. of PART I., p. 26.]

FORM LINE ON
THE LEADING
COMPANY.

(*Suppose Right in
front*)—

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
FOUR PACES ON
THE RIGHT
BACKWARDS
WHEEL.

Q. MARCH.

FORM LINE:
Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

If Right is in front, the Senior Major, on the *Caution*, moves up on the right of the new alignment to dress the base points (and the Coverers, as they run out): and when the formation is completed, gives STEADY and moves to his place in Line. If Left is in front, the Junior Major acts on the left as above explained for the Senior on the right. The Major not occupied in correcting the points, and the Adjutant, move across to their places in Line during the movement.

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the word COMPANY*—

The Captain of the leading Company, whether

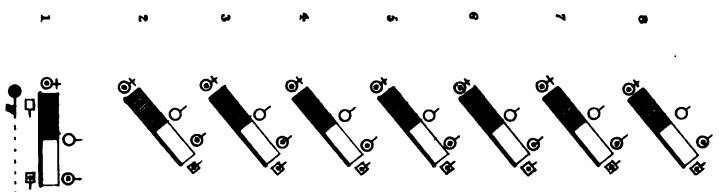
1

1. The first step is to identify the problem or question that needs to be addressed. This involves understanding the context and the specific requirements of the task.

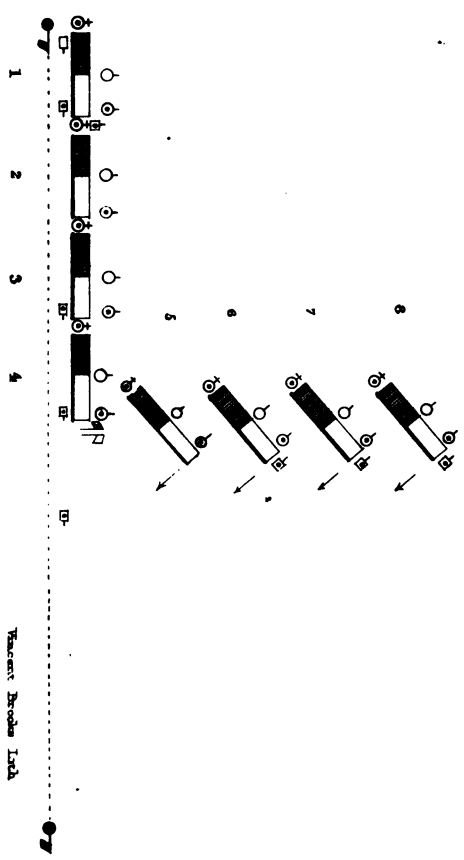
100

'T. 2. HATTALION DRILL. N°XXXIV An Open column forming Line, from the hall, on the front company.

After the Wheel into Echelon.



II After the 2nd word "O. MARCH" when 3 of the remaining Companies have wheeled up into Line.



FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN. 131

Right or Left is in front—dressing being always made to the distant point—changes his flank.

The other Captains (also whether *Right or Left* is in front) change flanks : *see* (D.) page 68.

(3) *On the word WHEEL—*

The Captain of each (except the leading) Company faces inwards, and corrects the position of the pivot man ; as in the corresponding No. (VII.) of PART I.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The Captain of the leading Company will give it the word *No. — : Right dress ; or No. — : Left dress ;* according as *Right or Left* is in front : and the dressing being completed, will give *Eyes front* and (changing his flank, if on the left) will fall in on the right of the Company.

Each of the other Captains will *Halt* and *Dress* his Company in echelon (as in No. VII., PART I.), give *Eyes front*, and fall in on the flank to which he changed on the *Caution*.

(4) *On the 2nd word MARCH—*

The Companies in echelon step off. Each Captain in succession will give his Company *No. — : Right (or Left) wheel* in time for it to wheel at the moment its pivot flank reaches the rear-rank man on the outer flank of the last halted Company : and when the Company is parallel to the alignment, *Halt : dress up*. He will then dress his men from the 2nd file beyond the Coverer of the last halted Company, give *Eyes front*, and (changing his flank, if on the left) take post in Line.

The Captain of the left-centre or right-centre Company, according as the Column was Right or Left in front, will dress the Colour party with his own men.

SUBALTERNS.

On the word COMPANY—

If Right is in front, the Lieutenant of the leading Company changes his flank: the other Lieutenants change, whether Right or Left is in front.

The supernumerary rank of the Company that last forms in Line will step back at the Captain's word *Halt: dress up*; that of each of the other Companies, when the Company which is to form on its outer flank gets the word—*wheel*: the Lieutenant, if Left was in front, changing his flank.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party moves up independently, as a Company, in echelon: and will be dressed in Line by the Captain of the left-centre or right-centre Company according as the Column was Right or Left in front.

N.B.—If the Line is to be formed *obliquely* to the front of the Column:—

The leading Company of the Column will first be wheeled back on its reverse flank into the required direction (its Captain acting as in No. VII., PART I.): and the remainder will then be wheeled back as above, on the reverse flanks, into echelon—taking, *in addition to the usual 4 paces*, half the number of paces wheeled back by the leading Company. The formation will then proceed as already described. If the leading Company is wheeled up on its reverse flank, the Line will be formed as in No. XXI.

(b) Line on the Rear Company.

**FORM LINE ON
THE REAR
COMPANY.**

**REMAINING
COMPANIES:
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.**

*(Suppose Right in
front)*—

**FOUR PACES ON
THE RIGHT
BACKWARDS
WHEEL.**

Q. MARCH.

**FORM LINE:
Q. MARCH.**

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

If Right is in front, the Junior Major: if Left in front, the Senior Major: dresses the base points and Coverers, as in (a).

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the word COMPANY—*

All the Captains, whether Right or Left is in front, stand fast.

(2) *On the word WHEEL—*

As in (a).

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The Captain of the rear Company will give it the word *No. — : Left dress* or *No. — : Right dress*, according as Right or Left is in front: and the dressing being completed, will give *Eyes front*, and (changing his flank, if on the left) will fall into his place in Line.

The other Captains, after their Companies have been faced about, proceed as in (a).

(4) *On the 2nd word MARCH—*

The Companies in echelon move off, rear rank in front. Each Captain in succession, gives his Company *No. — : Right (or Left) wheel* so that it may wheel into the alignment when the inner flank of its *proper* front rank reaches the front rank of the Company last formed in Line. He then gives *Forward*, and when 2 paces in rear of the alignment *Halt, front: dress up*. Having dressed the Company as in (a), he will move to his post in Line.

(c) Line on any central Company.

[The Companies in front of the named one are wheeled back, after being faced about, on their proper pivot flanks: those in rear are wheeled back on their reverse flanks.]

FORM LINE ON
No. —.

COMPANIES IN
FRONT:
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

(Suppose Right in
front)—

FOUR PAGES ON
THE RIGHT
BACKWARDS
WHEEL.

Q. MARCH.

FORM LINE:
Q. MARCH.
STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior Major will dress the Coverers from the right of the Company of formation: and the movement being completed, will give STEADY and move to his place. The Junior Major and Adjutant move to their places during the formation.

CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company:—

On the Caution—

If Right is in front, changes his flank.

On the word MARCH—

Dresses the Company from the right [No. —: *Right dress*], whether Right or Left, is in front; gives *Eyes front*; and takes post in Line.

The Captains in rear of the named Company proceed as in (a): those in front of it, as in (b).

(B) *On the March.* [*On the leading Company.*]

(a) If marching to the Front.

FORM LINE ON
THE LEADING
COMPANY.

(Suppose Right in
front)—

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
LEFT WHEEL.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in A. (a).

CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the leading Company moves on till FORWARD is given: He then gives

FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN. 135

(When in echelon)
FORWARD.

No. — : *Halt*, changes his flank, and gives *Dress*. Having dressed the Company as usual, he takes post in Line.

The other Captains :—

(1) *On the word WHEEL—*

Change flanks (by the rear).

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Companies in echelon move on into Line ; the Captains proceeding as in the same formation from the Halt.

[The word *FORWARD* is given when the Companies have taken a number of paces to one-half the number of files in each ; in other words, when they have wheeled one-eighth of a circle : see p. 5.]

(b) If marching to the Rear.

The Captain of the leading Company proceeds as in (a), except that his word will be *Halt*, front : *dress*. The other Captains, without changing their flanks, come up into Line as in forming on the Rear Company from the Halt.

N.B.—An Open Column may also form Line on its front or rear Company IN INVERTED ORDER (*i.e.* so as to place the right-flank Company on the left, the left-flank Company on the right, of the Line) : or, it may be ordered to form on the leading Company, *NOS.* — COMPANIES FORMING ON THE RIGHT: REMAINDER ON THE LEFT. In the latter case, after Line is formed, the Companies will be re-numbered.

SECTION IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

No. XXI.—*A Battalion in Open Column forming Line to the Reverse Flank.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 35, p. 157.)

FORM LINE TO
THE REVERSE
FLANK.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in No. XX. (A). p. 130.

CAPTAINS.

On the word FLANK—

Whether Right or Left is in front, all the Captains change flanks.

The Captain of the leading Company will then immediately give *No. — : Right wheel* or *No. — : Left wheel*, according as Right or Left is in front : and when the Company is parallel to the new alignment, *Forward*. Having advanced 3 paces, he will give *Halt : dress up.—Eyes front :* and (changing his flank, if on the left) will take post in Line.

Each of the other Captains in succession, on reaching the outer flank of the Company last formed in Line, will act in like manner.

SUBALTERNS.

On the word FLANK—

All the Lieutenants change flanks.

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

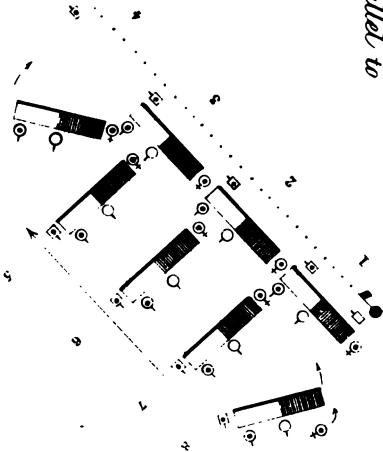
31

32

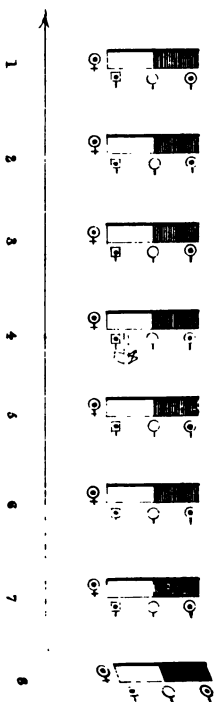
33

PART. 2. BATTALION DRILL. N^o XXI. *An Open Column forming line to the Reverse flank, at an angle less than a right angle.*

II. When 1, 2, and 8, have wheeled, and 4 is wheeling, up into line; and 8 is changing direction, parallel to the new alignment.



I. Before the Caution.



FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN. 137

The supernumerary rank of each Company, when formed in Line, will step back to their proper distance from the rear rank as the rear of the Column clears them: the Lieutenant changing his flank if necessary.

2. If the Line is to be formed at an angle *less than a right angle* to the front of the Column (in which case the leading Company will wheel less than the quarter circle):—

On the Caution—

The Captain of the 2nd Company (who will have been previously warned of the intended angle of formation) will order it to *Left wheel* or *Right wheel*, according as Right or Left is in front: at the same time changing his flank (by the rear). He will then give *Forward: By the right (or left)*, so that the Company may advance when on a line parallel to the new alignment: and on reaching the outer flank of the leading Company, will wheel his own into the alignment as already directed.

The other Captains will continue on their original pivot flanks, till each in succession reaches the spot where the 2nd Company changed direction: and will then proceed as directed for the Captain of that Company.

[A Column of Subdivisions (or Sections) will form Line to the Reverse flank in like manner; see the corresponding No. (XII.) of PART I. The Subdivisions (or Sections) of each Company, when dressing, will feel to the pivot file of the *Company*; that file, only, keeping its ground.]

SECTION IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

No. XXII.⁽¹⁾—*A Battalion in Double Column, on the March, forming Line to the Front.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 36, p. 159.)

N.B.—A Double Column should always form Line to the Front *on the March*, on the same principle as a single Column on the March (page 134): if the Column is required to form Line from the Halt without advancing the 2 front Companies (Subdivisions or Sections), it will be closed to quarter distance, and then deployed as described in No. XXIII.

† FORM LINE ON
THE TWO CENTRE
SUBDIVISIONS.

REMAINING
SUBDIVISIONS:
OUTWARDS
WHEEL.

(When in echelon)—
FORWARD.

STEADY.

(Suppose a Double Column of Subdivisions.)

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior Major will superintend the covering from the centre (*see* Note p. 140): and when the formation is completed, will give STEADY and move through the Line (the 2 left files of the right-centre Company giving way: *see* p. 71) to his place. The Junior Major will move out to the left of the Line, the Adjutant to the right: moving to their places when the movement is completed.

CAPTAINS.

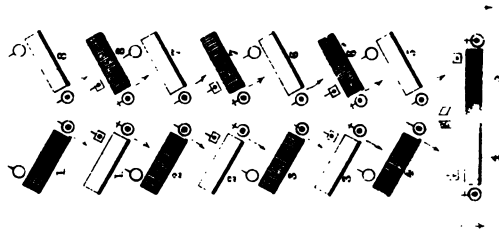
The Captains leading the two centre Subdivisions, continue to advance till the word *FORWARD*:

† The movement will be commenced at sufficient distance in rear of the alignment to allow of the advance of the 2 centre Subdivisions, while the rest are wheeling into echelon.

PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. V^o XII⁽¹⁾

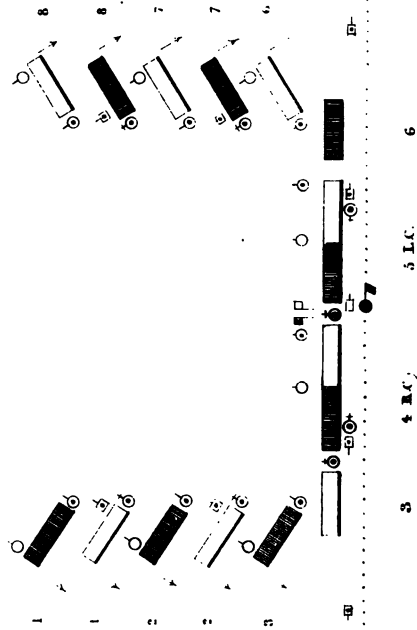
When the Battⁿ. advancing in D.C. of Subdivisions forms Line to the Front on the centre.

*During the 1st Wheel (into
echelon)*



100

II. After the word "FORWARD" when 4 of the Subdivisions have wheeled up into Line.



FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN. 139

when the left-centre Captain will give *Two centre Subdivisions: Halt. Four paces outwards Close: Q. March.*

Those two Captains then move across the front of their respective Subdivisions, and placing themselves one on each side of the centre Serjeant (who will move out to give a centre base point), and facing outwards, give *Dress: each to his own Subdivision.*

The right Subdivision of the right-centre, and the left Subdivision of the left-centre, Company having come up into Line:—The right-centre Captain gives his whole Company *No. —: Left dress.—Eyes front*, and (changing his flank) falls in on the right: the left-centre Captain, *No. —: Right dress.—Eyes front*, and falls in.

The other Captains:—

On the word WHEEL—

Change to their inner flanks (by the rear).

On the word FORWARD—

The right-wing Subdivisions move up into Line, as the remaining *Companies* in the formation of Line on the leading Company of a single Column (on the march) Left in front: the left-wing Subdivisions, as in the same formation when Right is in front. See No. XX. (B).

Each Captain moves out, and dresses the whole of his Company (from its inner flank) on his Covering-serjeant.

SUBALTERNs.

On the word WHEEL—

The Lieutenants change to the inner flanks of their Subdivisions (by the rear).

After the word FORWARD—

They give the same word of command as the Captains of their Wing: but, as their Subdivisions form up in Line, fall into their places in the supernumerary rank; leaving the dressing to be done by their Captains.

THE COLOURS.

The Colours move up into Line when the 2 centre Subdivisions close outwards to admit them.

The above directions apply equally to a Double Column of Companies or Sections: except that in the former the Lieutenants will, of course, be in rear of their Companies, and have no word of command to give. In the latter, each Subaltern leading a Section will act as above directed for the Lieutenants.

NOTE.—When a Battalion forms Line on the centre, its point of *appui* will be in the centre, though the general point of *appui* of the Brigade may be on a flank.

✻

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

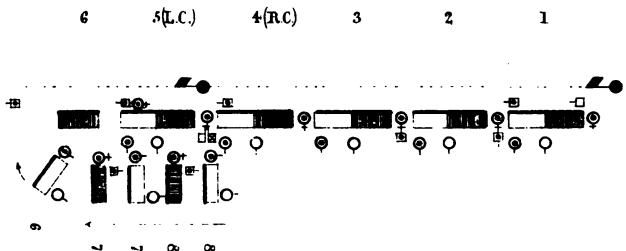
100

100

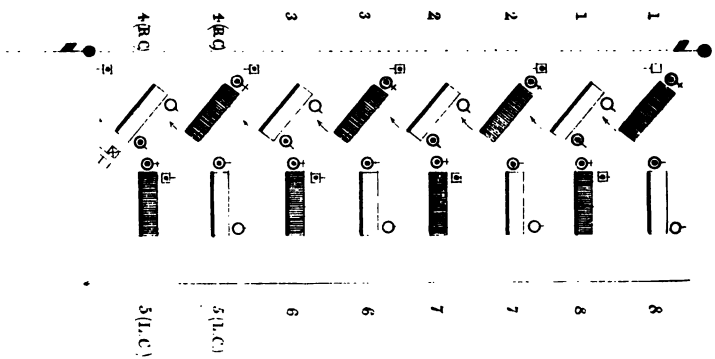
100

100

100



II. When all the Right Wing Subdivisions, and 3 of the Left Wing are formed in line.



I. While the Right Wing Subdivisions are wheeling into line.

SECTION IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

No. XXII.⁽²⁾—*A Battalion in Double Column forming Line to the Right or Left.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 37, p. 161.)

(A) *On the March.*

(*In forming to the Right*)—
COLUMN: BY THE RIGHT.
 —
FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT.
RIGHT WING: RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE.
 —
STEADY.

(Suppose a Double Column of *Subdivisions*, forming Line to the Right.)

[The supernumerary Serjeant of the right-flank Company marks the Right of the new Line. The centre *aide* gives a point in the centre of the Battalion; the right and left *aides* marking the flanks, as usual.]

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior Major will dress the Coverers from the Right of the new Line: and the formation being completed, will give **STEADY** and move to his place. The Junior Major, and Adjutant, move to their places during the formation.

CAPTAINS.

(¹) *On the words COLUMN: BY THE RIGHT*—

All the right-wing Captains will correct their covering and distance.

(²) *On the word LINE*—

Each right-wing Captain, while his Subdivisions are wheeling, moves to the right of his Company: and as they complete the quarter

circle, gives the whole Company *No. — : Halt, dress.—Eyes front*, and falls in.

The left-wing Captains change flanks : and proceed, in succession, as directed in No. XII. of PART I., p. 37.

SUBALTERNS.

(1) *On the words COLUMN: BY THE RIGHT—*

Right-wing Subdivision leaders correct their covering and distance.

(2) *On the word LINE—*

They fall back into their places in the supernumerary rank.

Left-wing Subdivision leaders act as in No. XII. of PART I.

THE COLOURS.

Wheel as a Subdivision.

[Line will be formed to the LEFT in like manner: the Command being *LEFT WING: LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE*, and Subdivision leaders of the left Wing proceeding as above directed for those of the right Wing, and *vice versd.*]

(B) *From the Halt.*

On the word MARCH—

The named Wing will wheel into Line as described in No. XIX. of PART II., or in No. X. of PART I.: according as the Double Column is one of Companies, or of Subdivisions [or Sections].

The other Wing will step off, and form up into Line as in No. XXI., p. 136, or No. XII., p. 37.

(*In forming to the Right*)—

FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT.

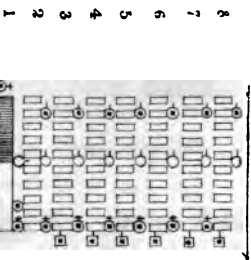
RIGHT WING:
RIGHT WHEEL
INTO LINE.

THE WHOLE:
Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

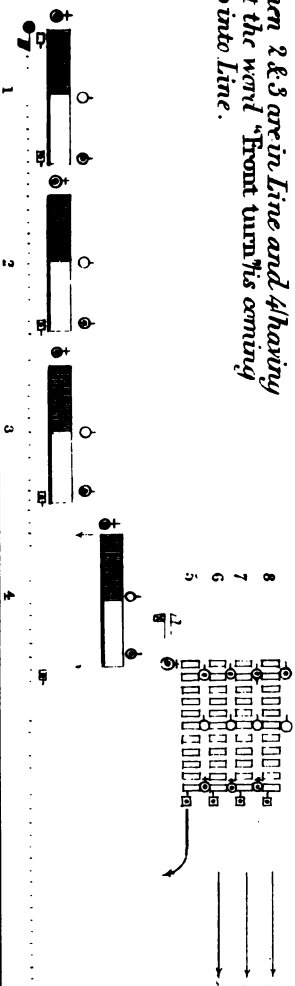
PART. 2. BATTALION DRILL. NO. XXIII. (A) A Battalion in Column (right in front) deploying on the leading Company.

I. On the word "FOURMSLEFT"

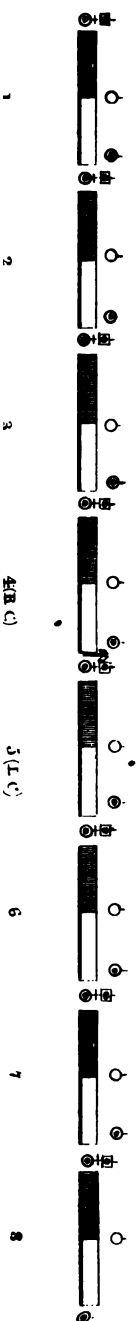


10-

II. When 2 & 3 are in line and 4 having got the word "Front turn this company up into line."



III. The line formed.



SECTION V.—DEPLOYMENTS.

No. XXIII.—*A Battalion in Close or Quarter-distance Column Deploying into Line on any named Company.*

(F. E. III., SECS. 38-42, pp. 163-168.)

[‡ Deployments are made from Column either at close or quarter distance; invariably on the base of the front Company; and, unless the ground should necessitate moving in files, by the flank march of Fours.]

N.B.—On the *Caution* to deploy on the leading Company, the Captain of that Company, only, changes his flank: on the Rear Company, the Captain of that Company is the only one who does not change his flank: on any central Company, the Captains in *front* of the named Company change flanks.

(A) *On the leading Company.*

DEPLOY ON THE FIELD OFFICERS.
LEADING COMPANY.

As in No. XX. (A) page 130.

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
FOURS LEFT
(or RIGHT).

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the word* COMPANY—

Q. MARCH.
STEADY.

The Captain of the named Company, whether Right or Left is in front, changes his flank.

‡ Deploy (*i.e.* to open out): from the French *deployer*, literally 'to display, unfold.' Deployment was first introduced (into the Prussian service) in 1748. The movement was originally termed by the French, *l'ordre du tiroir*, from its resemblance to the opening the drawers of a chest.

(2) *When Q. MARCH is given to the remaining Companies—*

He gives *No. — : Right dress, or Left dress* (according as Right or Left is in front): —
Eyes front : and, changing his flank if on the left, falls into his place in Line.

The other Captains:—

(1) *On the word LEFT (or RIGHT)—*

The Captain next in rear of the leading Company will take a pace to his front, and face to the right-about. The remainder place themselves on the right (or left) of their leading fours.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Companies in Fours step off.

The Captain next in rear of the leading Company stands fast, allowing his men to pass him till the last four reaches him. He then (placing himself on his inner flank) gives *No. — : Front turn*, and having advanced to 2 paces from the alignment, *Halt : dress up* ; dresses his men from the 2nd file from the outer† flank of the Company of formation, gives *Eyes front*, and (changing his flank, if on the left) falls into his place in Line.

Each of the remaining Captains in succession, when he hears *Front turn* given to the Company which stood next in front of him in the Column, will halt, and proceed as just explained for the Captain of the 2nd Company : dressing his men, when in Line, from the 2nd file beyond the Coverer of the last formed Company.

† The 'outer' flank is (as explained at p. 2) that farthest from the point of *appui* of the Line.

The Captain of the left-centre or right-centre Company, according as the Column was Right or Left in front, will dress the Colour party with his own men.

N.B.—If any Captain perceives that the Company which will precede him into Line has got the word *Front* turn too soon or too late, he should so time his own word *Front* turn as to correct the error in distance.

SUBALTERNS.

On the Caution—

The Lieutenant of the leading Company changes his flank.

The supernumerary rank of each Company will step back to its proper distance as soon as its rear is cleared by the Companies which are deploying.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party deploys independently : and, when in Line, will be dressed by the left-centre or right-centre Captain.

(B) *On the Rear Company.*

[The Company of formation, the moment its front is clear, will be moved up in Double time to the new alignment. Each of the other Companies, in succession, is halted and fronted when opposite to its position in the alignment; and when its front is clear, is brought up in Quick time into Line.]

**DEPLOY ON THE
REAR COMPANY.**

**REMAINING
COMPANIES:
FOURS RIGHT
(or LEFT).**

Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

If Right is in front, the Junior Major dresses the Coverers from the left of the new Line; if Left is in front, the Senior Major dresses them from the right: the word *STEADY* being given, in either case, when the formation is completed.

CAPTAINS.

⁽¹⁾ *On the word COMPANY—*

Whether Right or Left is in front :—The Captain of the named Company stands fast : all the other Captains changing their flanks.

⁽²⁾ *On the word RIGHT [or LEFT]—*

The Captain of the Company next in front of the named Company will take one pace to his front, and will face to the right-about. The other Captains in front place themselves on the left (or right) of their leading fours.

⁽³⁾ *On the word MARCH—*

The Companies in Fours step off.

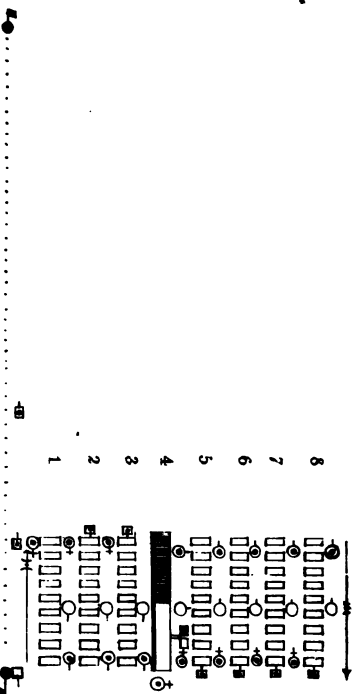
The Captain of the rear Company, the moment his front is clear, gives *No. — : By the left (or right) : Double March*, and having advanced to 2 paces from the alignment, *Halt ; dress up*. He then dresses the Company from the flank on which he came up into Line, gives *Eyes front*, and (changing flank, if on the left) falls into his place in Line.

The Captain of the rear-but-one Company stands fast, allowing his men to move past him till the last four reaches him. He then gives *No. — : Halt, front : dress*, and falls in on his inner flank, ready to move off. The moment his front is clear, he will give *No. — : By the left (or right) : Q. March*, and will lead up into Line as in (A).

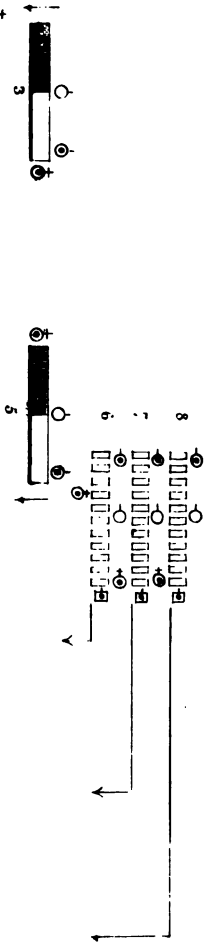
Each of the other Captains moves off with his Company till he hears *Halt : front* given to the Company which stood next in rear of him in the Column. He then halts, and proceeds as directed

PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. N°XXIII^(C) A Battⁿ in 4 dis. column (right in front) deploying into Line on N° 4 Company.

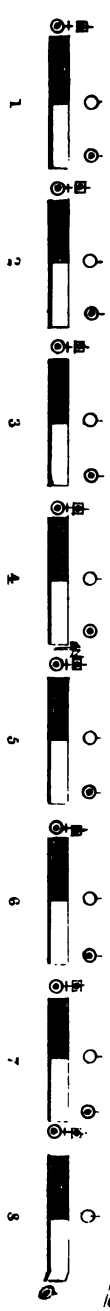
I. After the word "FOURS OUTWARDS"



**I. When 4 has doubled up into Line:
3 & 5 have fronted & are advancing:
2 has fronted & is about to advance:
& the rem^d Companies are in fours.**



III. The Line



for the Captain of the rear-but-one Company: dressing his men, when in Line, from the 2nd file beyond the Coverer of the last formed Company. The Captain of the right-centre or left-centre Company will dress the Colour party.

SUBALTERNS.

On the word COMPANY—

The Lieutenant of each (except the named) Company changes his flank.

The supernumerary rank of each Company gains its proper distance as it halts in Line; the Lieutenant again changing his flank, if necessary.

THE COLOURS: as in (A).

(C) *On any central Company.*

DEPLOY ON No. — FIELD OFFICERS.
COMPANY.

As in No. XXII.⁽¹⁾ p. 138.

REMAINING
COMPANIES: CAPTAINS.
FOURS
OUTWARDS.

Q. MARCH.
STEADY.

On the word COMPANY—

All the Captains in front of the named Company change flanks.

The Captain of the named Company proceeds as the Captain of the rear Company in (B).

The Captains of the Companies in rear of the named one, act, in succession, as explained in (A) for the Captains in rear of the leading Company: those in front, as directed in (B) for the Captains in front of the rear Company.

Note.—A Column may also be deployed on the *leading* Company IN INVERTED ORDER: or, with Nos. — COMPANIES FORMING ON THE RIGHT: REMAIN- DER ON THE LEFT. In the latter case, when the Line is formed, the Companies will be re-numbered.

¶ *Deploying from Double Column.*

A Double Column, when closed to quarter or close distance, may deploy on the 2 centre Companies or Subdivisions, like a single Column: those Companies (or Subdivisions) opening out, on the *Caution*, by command of the left-centre Captain, to admit the Colours; and the remaining Companies (or Subdivisions) of each Wing getting *Front turn*, in succession, when opposite their new front. If the Column is formed of Subdivisions, each Captain will dress both his Subdivisions from the inner flank of his Company. *See* No. XXII.⁽¹⁾ page 139.

Should a Double Column be ordered to deploy when it has moved up (not to the centre, but) to either extremity of an intended alignment, it will deploy both Wings in the same direction: the deployment being made on the rear Company (or Subdivision) of the right or of the left Wing, according as the Column has moved up to the right or left extremity of the new alignment. The Wing in which is the Company (or Subdivision) of formation, deploys as a single Column deploying on its *rear* Company: the other Wing marches off in fours, parallel to the alignment, till the former Wing's deployment is finished, and then deploys on its *leading* Company (or Subdivision)—so completing the Line.

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

1000000

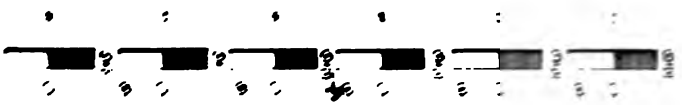
1000000

1000000

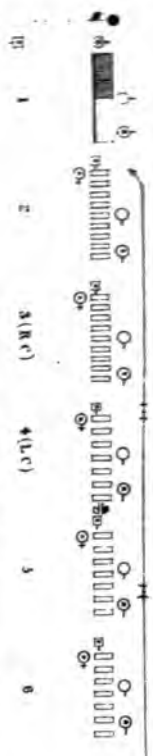
1000000

1000000

III. The Open Column Moved into the new alignment.



I. After the word "REMS" COMPANIES: FOURS RIGHT"



II. Open Column formed in front of N° 1.



SECTION V.—DEPLOYMENTS.

No. XXIV.—*A Battalion in Line changing Front by the intermediate formation of Open Column on any named Company.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 43, p. 169.)

[This Movement is simply a combination of the two described in Nos. XII. and XIX.: with this addition—that the Company of formation may, if required (as explained below), be first wheeled back any given number of paces.]

N.B.—When front is to be changed to the Right (on whatever Company), the Column will be formed Left in front, and the named Company—if required to wheel back—will wheel back on its right: when front is to be changed to the Left, *vice versa*.

(A) *On a flank Company (suppose No. 1): the opposite flank thrown forward.*

CHANGE FRONT
TO THE RIGHT
ON NO. 1 COM-
PANY, BY THE
FORMATION OF
OPEN COLUMN.

(Suppose the change of
Front is to be at right
angles)—

NO. 1: STAND FAST.

OPEN COLUMN IN
FRONT OF NO. 1
REMAINING
COMPANIES:
FOURS RIGHT.

Q. MARCH.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Field-officers, during the two parts of the movement, act as in Nos. XII. and XIX.

CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company (the right flank of which, being the point of intersection of the present and the intended Lines, will be the fixed point of *appui* of the latter) will, supposing the change of front is to be at right angles to the old Line, be cautioned to stand fast: and will

(*Column being formed*)
STEADY.

RIGHT WHEEL
INTO LINE.

Q. MARCH.

remain steady till the 2nd part of the movement commences.

If the new Line is to be formed obliquely to the old Line, and the word NO. 1: STAND FAST is consequently *not* given: the Captain of the named Company will, after the *Caution*, wheel it back till it is perpendicular to the new alignment, the direction of which will be determined by a point placed 15 or 20 paces beyond the right Battalion aide. [*No. 1: On the move; on the right backwards wheel. Q. March. — Halt, dress. — Eyes front.*]

The other Captains, during the formation of the Column, will act as the Captain of each (except the named) Company in No. XII., p. 104.

The Column, when formed, will be wheeled to the right into Line, as in No. XIX., p. 128.

See Note, p. 151.

[The Line will change front to the LEFT on the left-flank Company in like manner: the named Company (whose Captain will change his flank on the *Caution*), if not cautioned to stand fast, being wheeled backwards on its left; and the Column, when formed, being wheeled to the left into Line.]

SUBALTERNS and COLOURS: as in Nos. XII. and XIX.

(B) *On a flank Company (suppose No. 1): the opposite flank thrown back.*

CHANGE FRONT
TO THE LEFT ON
NO. 1 COMPANY,
BY THE FORMATION OF OPEN
COLUMN.

[NO. 1:
STAND FAST.]

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (A).

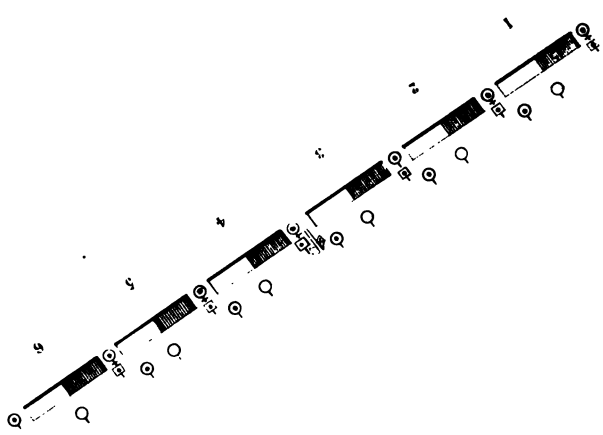
CAPTAINS.

The Captain of No. 1 changes, on the *Caution*, to his left flank (the point of formation for the new

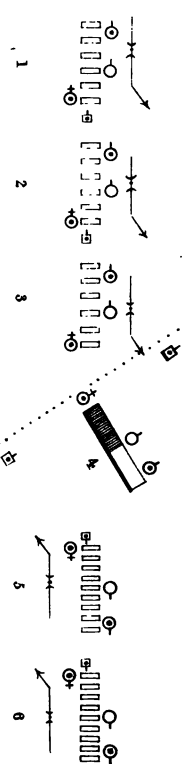
PART. 2. BATTALION DRILL. NOXXIV(C)

Changing front by Open Column to the Right on a natural Company (N^o 4) obliquely to the old line.

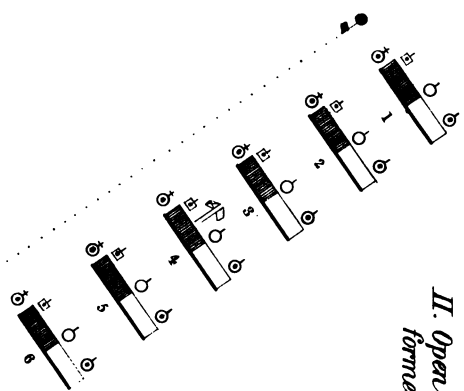
III. The Open Column wheeled into the new alignment.



I. After the word "FOURS INWARDS."



II. Open Column Left in front formed on N^o 4.



CHANGING FRONT BY OPEN COLUMN. 151

OPEN COLUMN
IN REAR OF NO. 1.
REMAINING
COMPANIES:
FOURS RIGHT.

Q. MARCH.

(Column being formed)
STEADY.

LEFT WHEEL
INTO LINE.

Q. MARCH.

Line): and—unless then cautioned to STAND FAST—will order his Company to wheel back on its left till it is perpendicular to the new alignment. [No. 1: *On the move; on the left backwards wheel.* Q. *March.—Halt, dress.—Eyes front.*]

The formation will then proceed as in (A).

[The Line will change front to the RIGHT on the left-flank Company in like manner: the named Company (whose Captain will *not* change his flank), if not cautioned to stand fast, being wheeled back on its right; and the Column, when formed, being wheeled to the right into Line.]

SUBALTERNS and COLOURS: as in (A).

See Note.

(C) *On a central Company: one flank thrown forward, the other back.*

CHANGE FRONT
TO THE RIGHT
(or LEFT) ON
NO. * COMPANY,
BY THE
FORMATION OF
OPEN COLUMN.

[NO. *:
STAND FAST.]

OPEN COLUMN
LEFT (or RIGHT)
IN FRONT,
ON NO. *.

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
FOURS
INWARDS.

Q. MARCH.

(Column being formed)
STEADY.

RIGHT (or LEFT)
WHEEL INTO LINE.

Q. MARCH.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (A).

CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company, if front is to be changed to the Left, changes his flank on the *Caution*: and—unless then cautioned to STAND FAST—wheels back his Company as already described; the new direction being given by his Coverer (*see p. 214*).

The formation will then proceed as in (A) and (B).

SUBALTERNS and COLOURS: as in (A).

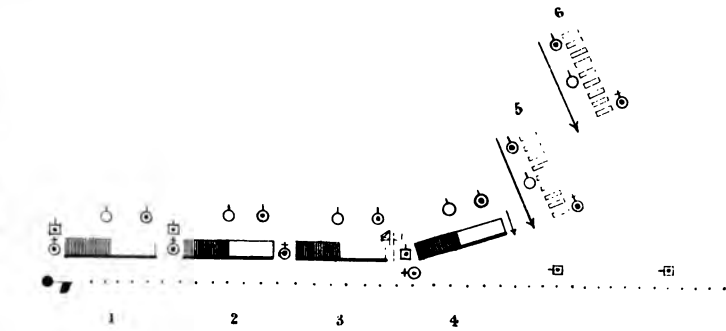
Note to (A), (B), and (C). In order to save time, the Battalion Commander may direct the

Captain of the Company of formation to wheel it into its place in the new Line, *as soon as the alignment is taken up by the aides*. When this is the case :—Each of the remaining Companies in succession, if moving to the *front* of the old alignment, as in (A), will get the word *Front form Company* from its Captain as its leading four reaches its Covering-serjeant, and will then be dressed in Line as usual : but if moving to the *rear* of the old alignment, as in (B), it will move on, and wheel short round, its Coverer ; will march—in rear of, and parallel to, the new alignment—straight on the outward flank of the Company next to it already formed in Line ; and, when opposite to its new front, will get the word *Halt, front : dress.—Eyes front*.

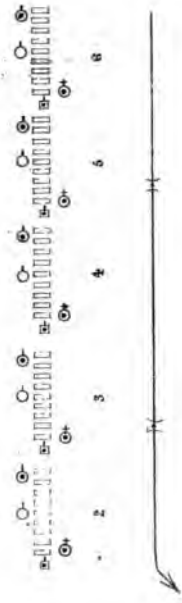
For changing the front of a Line by *Echelon*, see No. XXVII.

ART. 2. BATTALION DRILL. N°XXIV (Note) When the flank Company of formation is wheeled into Line as soon as the alignment is taken up: the remainder forming in their covers.

1. When 2 and 3 are formed in Line, and 4 is front forming Company.

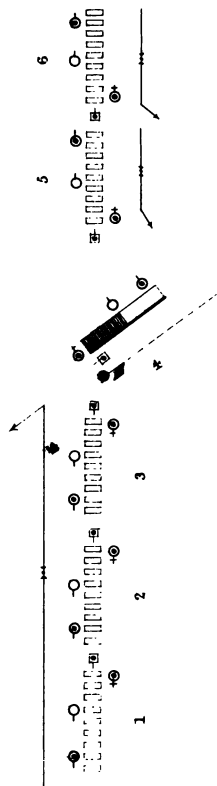


1. After the word "REMO" COMPANIES "FOURS RIGHT."



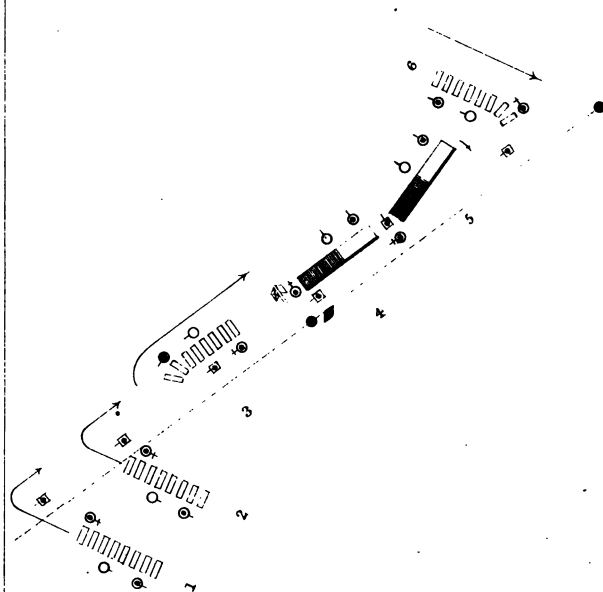
the alignment is taken up: The remainder forming on their Covers.

I. After the word "FOURS INWARDS".



II. When 5 is front forming Company; and 3 wheeling round its Coverer into its place in Line.

NB. The Covers are made to face as they would have faced had Open Column' been formed, in the regular way on N^o 4.



SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

§ *Of Echellon.*

‡ Echellon is of two kinds—the *Direct* and the *Oblique* : the former being used to advance or refuse a flank ; the latter being applied when the Battalion is required to take ground diagonally at once to the front and to a flank, or when a Line is required to change its front.

(1) A Direct Echellon is formed by Companies (or parts of Companies) marching off in succession direct to the front, or rear, commencing from either flank of a Line, at equal distances one from the other ; and may be re-formed into a Line parallel to that from which it moved, by the successive formation of its component parts on any named and halted part. [An *oblique* Line cannot be formed from a Direct Echellon without a fresh adjustment of the distances between the pivot flanks of its component parts : see page 169.]

(2) An Oblique Echellon is formed from Line by wheeling forward the Companies on fixed or moveable (or parts of Companies on moveable) pivots, *less than the quarter circle*, to either flank : and—the pivots being at wheeling distance—may, at any moment, be wheeled back into a Line parallel to that from which it was formed. Each Company (or part of a Company), after being wheeled forward, will move on a line perpendicular to its own front :

‡ Echellon, from the French *echelon*, literally 'a round of a ladder.'—"For an advance against an enemy in position, the Direct Echellon formation presents advantages afforded by no other. It combines the greater correctness of the march in Column with the superior force, for collision, of the Line."—MacDougall's *Theory of War*.

the pivot files being kept at the proper distances ; and their dressing, in a line parallel to the original alignment, being carefully preserved. Thus, all the component parts of the Echelon, and also their several lines of direction, will be parallel.

[In taking ground obliquely to the Rear, or when (in changing the Front of a Line) a flank of the Battalion is thrown back, the Companies will be faced about, and wheeled forward rear-rank in front.]

For the covering of Company leaders in Oblique Echelon, *see* Note p. 157.

¶ 1. If an Oblique Echelon, used for the purpose of taking ground diagonally to the front and to a flank, is to be composed of Companies, the Companies may be wheeled up either on fixed or moveable pivots, and any number of paces (less than the quarter circle): but if it is to be formed of Subdivisions [or Sections], the wheel will always be one-eighth of a circle, and made on moveable pivots.

¶ 2. In *changing the front of a Line* by oblique echelon (in which case the Echelon will always be formed of Companies):—The Company of formation must form double the angle with the original alignment, that the remaining Companies form; in order that the latter may be placed perpendicularly to the lines by which they must march to their points of formation. Thus:—

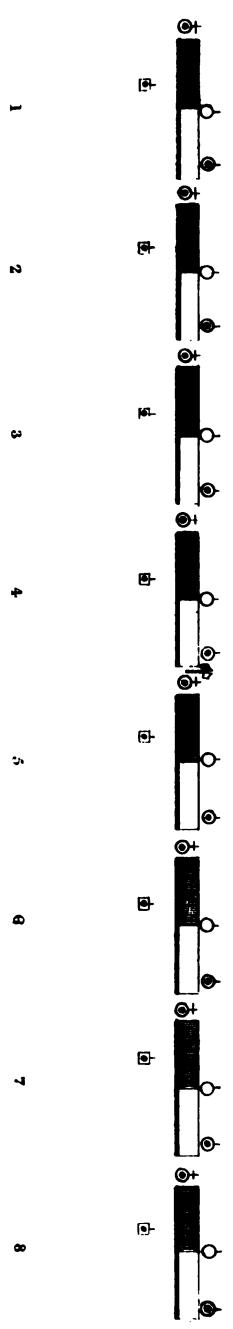
(¹) If the Company of formation is wheeled up from echelon into the new alignment, the same number of paces it (and the remaining Companies) originally wheeled from Line into echelon; the remaining Companies, as they stand, will be at the proper angle for forming Line.

(²) If the Company of formation is wheeled up from echelon into the new alignment *more* paces than those it (and the remaining Companies) originally wheeled, the *remaining Companies* must wheel up half the excess over the original number of paces wheeled:—*E.g.* If the original wheel from Line into echelon was 3 paces, and the Company of formation then wheels forward (not 3, but) 5 paces more—making 8 paces in all—into the new alignment; the remaining Companies must wheel up 1 pace, making 4 paces in all.

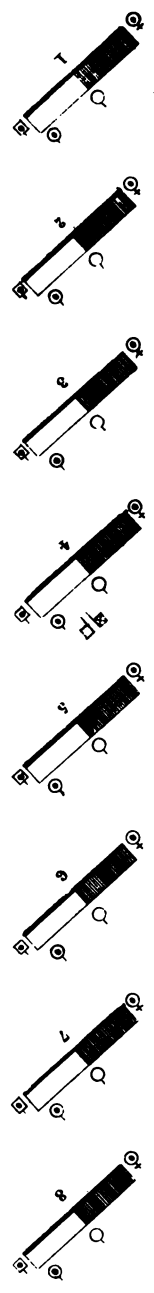
(³) On the same principle: If the new Line is to be formed on the prolongation of the front Company as it stands in the Echelon (*see* No. XXVI. B.), the remaining Companies will have to wheel *back*, on their pivot flanks, half the number of paces they originally wheeled forward from Line.

(F. E., pp. 186, 191.)

I. After the word "FOUR PAGES, RIGHT WHEEL"



II. When the Echelon is formed



SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

No. XXV.—*A Battalion wheeling forward into Echelon.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 53, p. 188.)

(A) *From the Halt.* [By Companies.]

WHEEL INTO
ECHELLON OF
COMPANIES TO
THE RIGHT (or
LEFT).

COMPANIES.—
PACES RIGHT
(or LEFT)
WHEEL.

STEADY.
Q. MARCH.

THE ECHELLON
WILL ADVANCE.

Q. MARCH.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major nearest the flank which is to lead will move up to that flank, correct the Coverers, and give STEADY. During the advance in echelon, he will place himself in rear of the Captain of the leading Company, and will superintend his direction: the other Major and the Adjutant looking to the covering of the line of pivots.

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

If the wheel is to be to the left; all the Captains change flanks. (*See Note.*)

(2) *On the word WHEEL—*

Captains take one pace to their front and one to their left; and, the Coverers having passed, resume their places, face inwards, and correct the covering of their respective pivot men.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

As in the corresponding No. (VII.) of PART I.: except that each Captain, after giving his word *Halt: dress.—Eyes front*, will invariably remain on the flank from which he has dressed his Company.

(3) *On the 2nd word MARCH—*

The Echelon will advance: the Captain of the leading Company selecting points to march on, the remainder attending to their covering and distance (*see Note*).

SUBALTERNS.

On the Caution—

The Officer on the left of the Line falls back into the supernumerary rank.

If the wheel is to be to the left, all the Lieutenants change flanks.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party wheels up, and forms an independent Section.

(B) *On Moveable pivots.* [By Companies, Subdivisions, or Sections.]

(*From the Halt.*)
TAKE GROUND
TO THE RIGHT
(*or LEFT*) IN
ECHELLON OF
COMPANIES
[SUBDIVISIONS *or*
SECTIONS].

ON THE MOVE,
BY COMPANIES
[SUBDIVISIONS
or SECTIONS]:
RIGHT (*or LEFT*)
WHEEL.

Q. MARCH.

(*When in echelon*)—
FORWARD.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (A).

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

If the Echelon is to be formed of Companies, the Captains (if not already there) will change to the named flanks: if it is to be formed of Subdivisions [or Sections], they will remain in their places (*see Note*).

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Echelon advances: the leader of the leading Company (Subdivision or Section) selecting points to march on.

[The same directions apply if ground is taken to a flank as above, when a Battalion is *on the March*.]

SUBALTERNS.

On the Caution—

If the Echellon is to be formed of Companies, Subalterns proceed as in (A): if of Subdivisions [or Sections], they remain in their places.

THE COLOURS.

As in (A).

[If the Battalion is required to wheel into echellon to the Rear, it will be faced about; and the Companies (Subdivisions, or Sections) will be wheeled forward, rear rank in front.]

If it is required to form SQUARE, the Echellon is simply wheeled forward into Column, (Captains remaining on whichever flank of their Companies they may be marching): and Square is then formed as directed in No. XXX.

Note.—When an Oblique Echellon is formed of Companies, Captains (if not already there) always change, on the *Caution*, to the flanks that become the pivots (*i.e.* those on which the Companies wheel forward): the Captain of the leading Company will lead the Echellon; each Captain in rear looking, for his covering and distance, along the line of pivots, to the flank to which the Battalion is inclining. In Echellon of Subdivisions (or Sections), to whichever flank inclining, each Captain retains the place he occupies in Line; and, if the inclination is to the right, will keep the dressing and distance of his right Subdivision (or 1st Section): if the inclination is to the *left*, all the Subdivisions (or Sections) are led by their respective pivot men. See p. 85.

SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

No. XXVI.—*A Battalion in Oblique Echelon of Companies re-forming Line.*

(F. E. III., Secs. 54, 55, p. 191.)

(A) *Forming Line parallel to the original Line.*

- [Pivot men, on the *Caution*, face into the *Line*, and
 • raise the right hand till they have been dressed.]

(*From the Halt.*)
 WHEEL BACK
 INTO LINE.

STEADY.

Q. *MARCH.*

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Major on the directing flank dresses the pivot men: and gives the word *STEADY*.

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the word LINE—*

Each Captain takes a pace to his front, and faces towards his Company.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Companies having wheeled back, the Captain of each gives *No. — : Halt, dress.—Eyes front:* and (changing his flank, if on the left) falls into his place in *Line*.

SUBALTERNS.

The Lieutenant of each Company, when it has wheeled back, changes his flank if necessary.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party wheels back into Line with the Companies : taking up its dressing with the Company that wheels back to it from Echellon.

This movement may also be performed *on the March* : the Captains marking time while their Companies wheel back on them into Line, and the Battalion Commander giving *FORWARD* when the wheels are completed. Flanks will be changed (if necessary) on the word *FORWARD*.

(B) Forming Line oblique to the original Line.

[This Movement is always done from the Halt.]

Suppose Line is to be formed on the prolongation of the front Company, as it stands, of an Echellon formed to the Right. (See ¶ 2, page 154.)

**FORM LINE ON
THE LEADING
COMPANY.**

(Suppose the original
wheel was 4 paces)—

**REMAINING
COMPANIES:
TWO PACES ON
THE RIGHT BACK-
WARDS WHEEL.**

**STEADY.
Q. MARCH.**

**FORM LINE:
Q. MARCH.**

FIELD OFFICERS.

On the Caution—The Major nearest to the Company of formation moves up to dress the Coverers, and gives *STEADY*: moving to his place in Line when the formation is completed.

CAPTAINS.

The Captain of the named Company will stand fast during the whole formation.

Each of the other Captains :—

(1) On the word WHEEL—

Takes a pace to his front, and faces towards his Company.

(2) On the word MARCH—

The Companies having wheeled back the named

number of paces, the Captain of each will give
No. — : Halt, dress.—Eyes front, and will fall in
 on the pivot flank.

(3) *On the 2nd word MARCH—*

The Companies that were wheeled back, step
 off: and, in succession, form up in Line as directed
 in No. XX. (a), page 131.

The Captain of the left-centre Company will
 dress the Colour party with his own men.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party moves up independently into
 Line.

[If the Company of formation is to be wheeled up, the
 Battalion Commander's *Caution* will commence thus :—
**FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY: WHICH
 WILL WHEEL — PACES:** and he will then direct the
 remaining Companies to wheel (forward) the necessary
 number of paces. See page 154.]

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

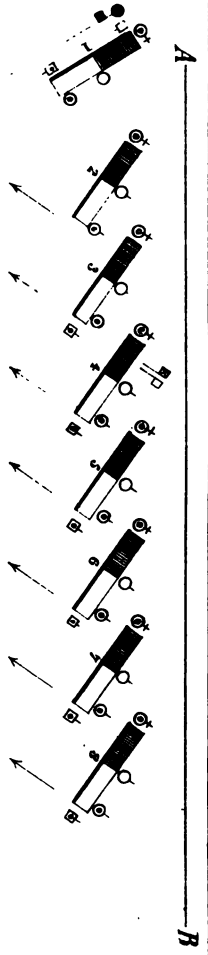
100

100

PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. N^o XXVII. A

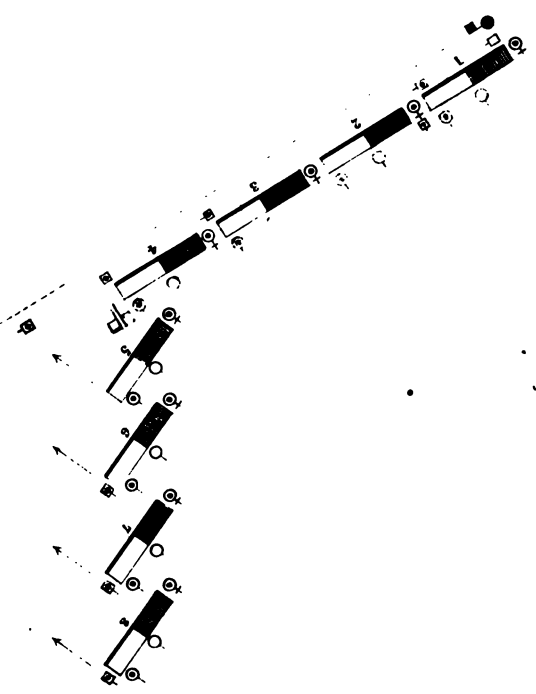
A Battⁿ changing front to the Right on the Right Flank Company obliquely in the old Line: (the opposite Flank thrown forward.)

*The remaining Companies
moving forward on
the move: the pieces which
have got FORWARD.*



A B shows the original front

*II. When all the Companies but 1 have come up
into the New Line.*



SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

No. XXVII.—*A Battalion in Line changing Front by Echelon.*

(F. E. III., SECS. 56–58, pp. 193–199.)

N.B.—The directions given for this Movement assume that the Company of formation is wheeled into the required direction, by its Captain, on the *Caution*; and that the remainder are wheeled into Echelon on *moveable pivots* by the Battalion Commander:—"the method which should generally be adopted." [When the change of front is to be at right angles to the old Line, the Battalion Commander's *Caution* will state that the flank is to be thrown forward (or back) **THE QUARTER CIRCLE.**]

(A) *On a flank Company (suppose No. 1); the remainder thrown forward.*

[*On the Caution*—The *aides* move out to mark the alignment: a 2nd point (20 or 30 paces beyond the *aide* on the flank of the Company of formation) being placed, if required, for the guidance of the distant *aide*.]

CHANGE FRONT
ON THE
RIGHT COMPANY,
LEFT THROWN
FORWARD.

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
ON THE MOVE,
RIGHT WHEEL:
Q. MARCH.

(*When in echelon*)—
FORWARD.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

On the Caution—The Major of the inner Wing moves up to the point of formation, to be ready to dress the Coverers as they run out to give their points. The formation being completed, he gives **STEADY** and takes post in Line.

CAPTAINS.(1) *On the Caution*—

The Captain of the named Company gives
No. 1: On the move, Right wheel: Q. March, and

when it has wheeled into the required direction,
Halt, dress.—Eyes front, and falls in. (See Note.)

[When the formation is on the *left-flank* Company, all the Captains change flanks.]

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Companies in echelon, and the Colour party, move up into Line as in (a) page 131.

(B) *On a flank Company (suppose No. 1): the remainder thrown back.*

[On the *Caution*—The *aides* (and directing point, if required) move out as in (A): the distant *aide* moving in the required direction in rear of the Line.]

(Suppose the change of front is to be at right angles)—

CHANGE FRONT
ON THE
RIGHT COMPANY,
LEFT THROWN
BACK THE
QUARTER CIRCLE.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in (A).

CAPTAINS.

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of the named Company gives No. 1: *On the right backwards wheel. Right-about face. Q. March:* and the quarter-circle wheel being completed, *Halt, front: dress.—Eyes front, and falls in.*

ON THE MOVE,
LEFT WHEEL:
Q. MARCH.

(When in echelon)—
FORWARD.

[When the formation is on the *left-flank* Company, all the Captains change flanks.]

STEADY.

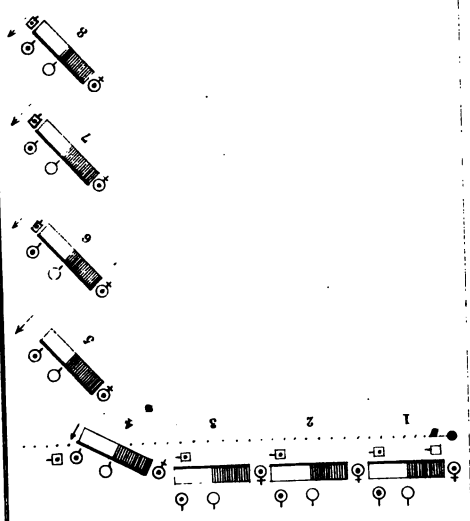
(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Companies in echelon, and the Colour party, move up into Line, rear rank in front: as in (b) page 133.

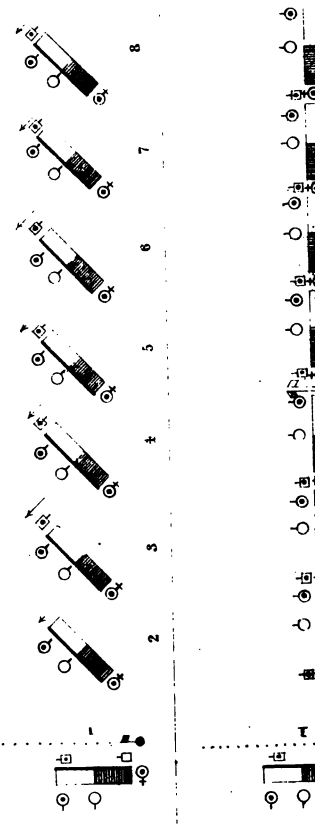
Note.—When a Battalion on the March is ordered to change Front on either flank Company, ON THE MARCH: the flank Company of formation will wheel at the double.

PART. 2. BATTALION DRILL, No XXVII. (B) *A Battⁿ changing front to the Left on the Right Flank Company, at right angle to the old Line: (the opposite flank thrown back).*

III. When 2 and 3 have formed up in line; and 4 has got the word "Left Wheel."



II. When the remaining Companies, having been faced about, and wheeled (on the move) 4 paces, have got "FORWARD."



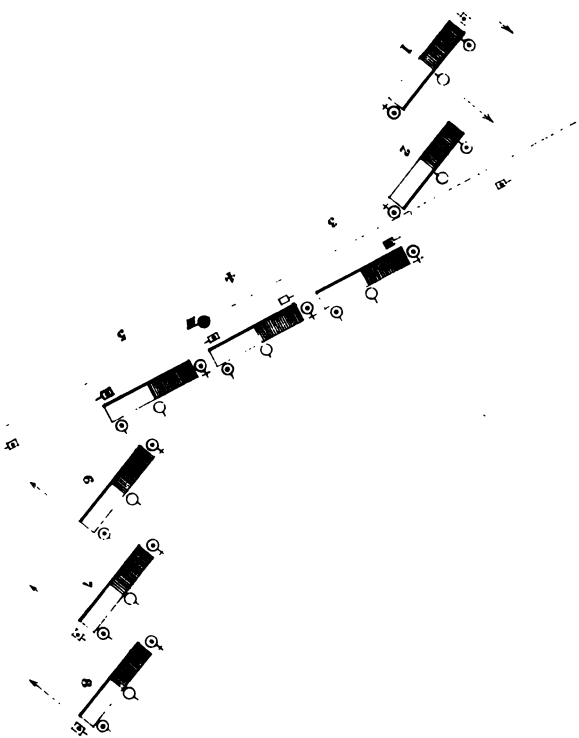
I. After the Caution when the Captain of No. 1. has wheeled it back into the new direction.



PART 2. BATTALION DRILL NO XXVII. (C)

Changing from the Right on a central Company, obliquely to the old Line, Left down forward

I. When the Company of formation (4) having been wheeled up by its Captain, Nos 1, 2 & 3 have got RIGHT ABOUT FACE.



II. When No 5 has been halted and No 3 halted & fronted, in the new Line, and the remaining Companies are moving up into Line.

(C) *On a central Company, or the 2 centre Companies : one Wing advanced, the other retired.*

(a) If the formation is on a central Company :—

[The centre *aide* will give his base point at arm's length from the Covering-serjeant of the named Company : see p. 217. The other *aides* : as in (A) and (B).]

CHANGE FRONT
ON THE CENTRE
(or ON NO. —
COMPANY),
LEFT THROWN
FORWARD.

RIGHT WING
(or COMPANIES
ON THE
RIGHT):
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

ON THE MOVE,
INWARDS WHEEL:
Q. MARCH.

(When in echelon)—
FORWARD.

STEADY.

FIELD OFFICERS : as in (c) page 134.

CAPTAINS.

(Suppose Left is to be thrown forward.)

(1) *On the Caution—*

All the Captains on the right of the named Company change flanks.

The Captain of the named Company will order it to wheel on its centre into the new alignment.

[No. — : *On the centre ; on the move, Right wheel : Q. March.—Halt, dress.—Eyes front.*]

(2) *On the word FORWARD—*

The Companies in echelon move up into Line : those that were faced about proceeding as directed in (b) page 133 ; the remainder, as in (a) page 131.

(b) If the change of front is on the centre of the
Battalion :—

[The centre Serjeant moves out to give a centre point : the centre *aide* giving his base point at arm's length from him. The other *aides* : as in (A) and (B).]

FIELD OFFICERS : as in No. XXII.⁽¹⁾ p. 138.

CAPTAINS.

(Suppose Left is to be thrown forward.)

On the Caution—

The Captain of the left-centre Company gives
Two centre Companies : On the centre ; on the move,

Right wheel: Q. March: and when those Companies have wheeled (on the front-rank man of the inner file of the left-centre Company) into the required direction, *Halt, dress.* Each centre Captain then dresses his own Company from the centre Serjeant, gives *Eyes front*, and falls in.

The other Captains: as in (a).

The movement then proceeds as in (a).

When the wheels into echelon are to be made (not as described above, but) *on fixed pivots*, the Coverer of the Company of formation will run out to mark where its wheeling flank will rest, or will step his paces from the 8th file (under the superintendence of the Battalion Commander), according as the change of front is to be at right angles or obliquely; and the Captain will then order the Company to wheel. The remaining Companies (all, or part of them, having—if necessary—been faced about) will then be ordered by the Battalion Commander to wheel half the number of paces wheeled by the Coverer of the Company of formation (their Coverers stepping their paces from the 8th file, in the usual way); and will then be marched up into Line as already described.

Note.—If, during a change of front on a flank Company, it is necessary to form **SQUARE**, all the Companies may be wheeled up into Open Column towards the point of formation: and Square can then be formed as in No. XXX. Or, if the change of front is on a central Company, the Companies in echelon may form independent Company Squares, as in No. XXXIII.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

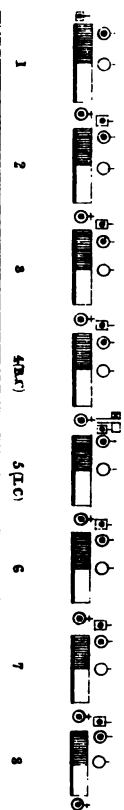
.

.

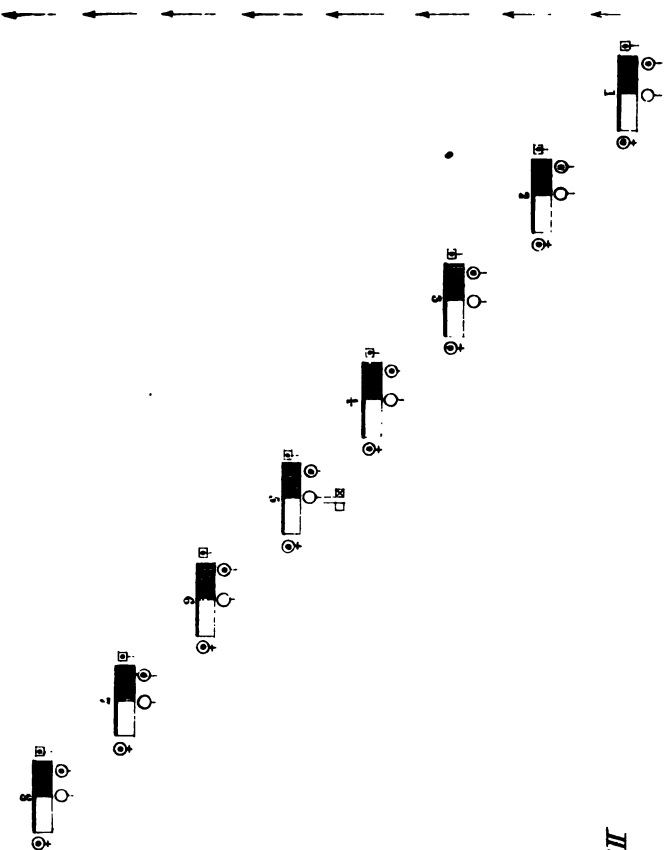
.

.

I. After the Caution.



II. In Echelon.



SECTION VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

No. XXVIII.—*A Battalion in Line advancing or retiring in Direct Echellon of Companies from either Flank.*

(F. E. III., SEC. 59, p. 200.)

[If it is intended to change front to either flank at right angles, the Companies will be ordered to march off at wheeling distance: otherwise, they may be marched off at any named distance from each other.]

THE BATTALION
WILL ADVANCE
[or RETIRE]
IN DIRECT
ECHELLON OF
COMPANIES,
AT — DISTANCE,
FROM THE RIGHT
(or LEFT).

CAPTAINS.

On the Caution—

If the movement is to be from the Left, all the Captains change flanks.

The Captain of the Company on the named flank will give *No. — : By the right (or left): Q. March*, or *No. — : Right-about face. By the present left (or right): Q. March*, according as the movement is to be to the front or rear: and will lead straight to his front, selecting points to march upon.

Each of the other Captains, in succession, will give the same word when the Company which will precede him in the Echellon has gained the required distance: giving *Quick* as the men of that Company place the left foot, *March* as they place the right foot, on the ground.

[In *retiring*: Captains must take care to give

[*FORM LINE:*
Q. MARCH.]

STEADY.

his flank if necessary. If on the March, he will give his word *Halt* when the remaining Companies get the word *RIGHT-ABOUT TURN*.

The Captain of each of the other Companies changes his flank, and leads up into Line : giving *Halt, front : dress up* when his proper front rank is in line with the rear rank of the last halted Company ; dressing his men as usual ; and taking post in Line.

(3) On a Central Company.

RE-FORM LINE ON
No. — COMPANY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

COMPANIES
IN FRONT:
*RIGHT-ABOUT
TURN [or FACE].*

As in (c) page 134.

CAPTAINS.

[*FORM LINE:*
Q. MARCH.]

STEADY.

The Captain of the named Company : as in (2).
The Captains in front of the named Company,
as in (2) : those in rear of it, as in (1).

(B) *Line at right angles to the original Line.*

[If the advance was from the Left, the wheel will be to the right : and *vice versé*.]

FORM LINE TO
THE RIGHT.

FIELD OFFICERS.

BY

As in (a) page 130.

COMPANIES:
RIGHT WHEEL.
(When square) —
FORWARD.

CAPTAINS.

STEADY.

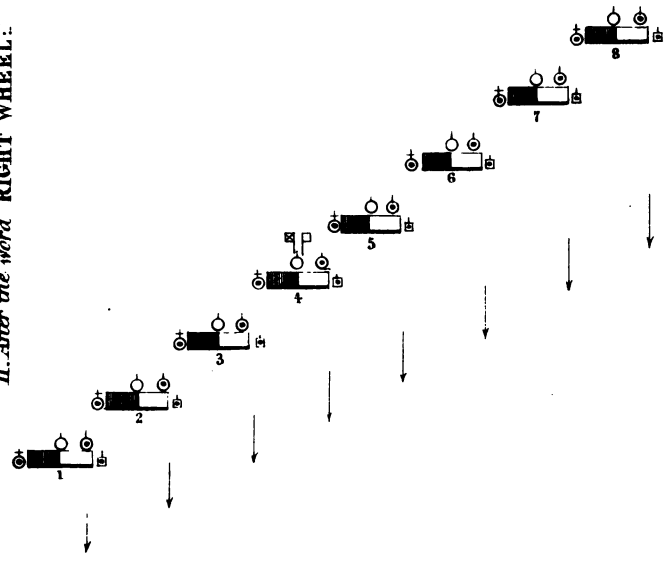
During the wheel, the Captains change to the flanks which will now become the 'inner'.

On the word *FORWARD*—

The remaining Companies form up, in succession, into Line, as in (A) 1.

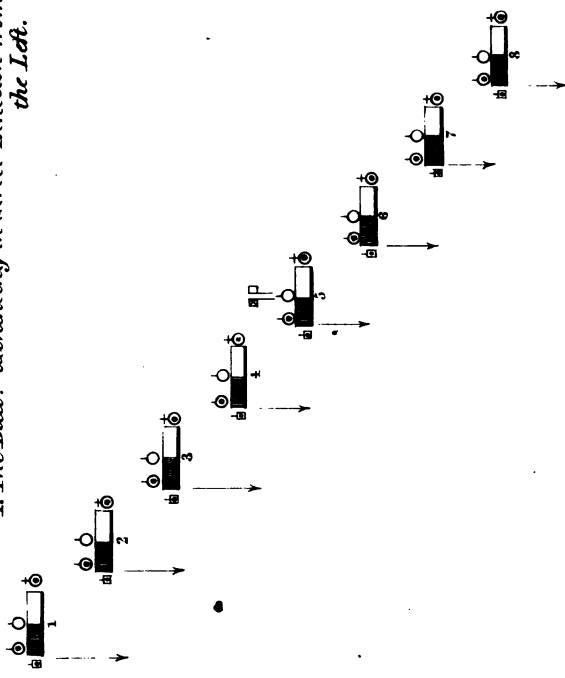
When the Battⁿ advancing in direct Echelon from the Left reforms Line at right angles to the original alignment.

II. After the word "RIGHT WHEEL."



Note. Line can now be formed to the new front, on any company.

I. The Battⁿ advancing in direct Echelon from the Left.



11

12

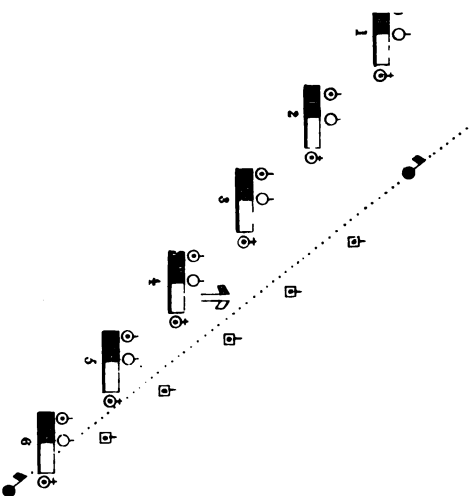
13

14

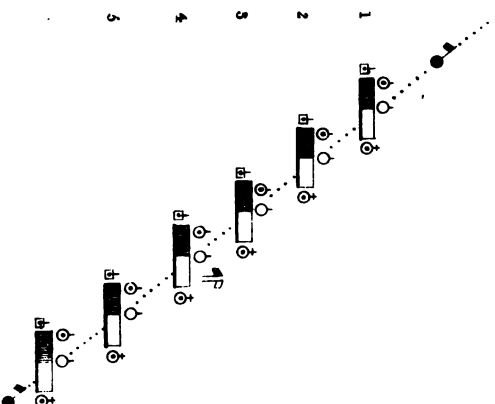
PART. 2. BATTALION DRILL. № XXIX. (C.)

A Battalion in Direct Echelon forming Line in an Oblique direction.

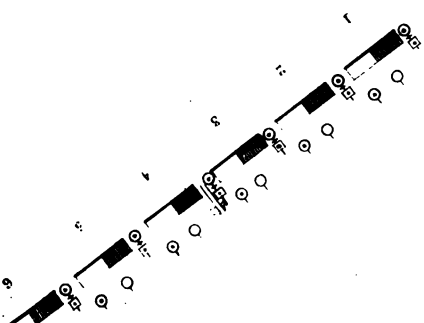
After the Caution.



II. When the Companies have marched diagonally on the Coverers; and the latter have fallen in on the reverse flanks.



III. When the Companies have been wheeled back on their left into Line.



(C) *Line oblique to the original Line.*

[The directing (*i.e.* the outward) flank of the leading Company will be taken as the first point in the intended Line: *see* p. 218. The *aides* are placed as usual.]

FORM OBLIQUE
ECHELLON ON
THE LEADING
COMPANY.

FIELD OFFICERS.

As in No. XXVI.

REMAINING
COMPANIES:
RIGHT (or LEFT)
HALF FACE.

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the Caution—*

Q. MARCH.
WHEEL BACK
INTO LINE.
Q. MARCH.
STEADY.

The Coverers of the remaining Companies run back, and mark the points when the pivot flanks of the Companies next in rear of them are to rest; taking wheeling distance, in succession, from base points: *see* p. 218.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

Each (except the leading) Company marches diagonally on the Coverer of that which stood next in front of it in the Echellon: the Captain giving *No. — : Halt, front : dress* on reaching the Coverer.

The Oblique Echellon thus formed will then be wheeled back into Line, as in No. XXVI. (A).

SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

[Square may be formed either from Column or from Line: but is usually formed from *Column*. To resist Cavalry, Squares are formed four-deep: to protect baggage, &c., against Infantry, they may be formed two-deep. In all Squares, Officers are in the centre, in rear of their own Companies: the mounted Officers, at Drill, may remain outside, to superintend the formation.]

No. XXX.—*A Battalion in Column forming Square on any named Company.*

(F. E. III., SECS. 44–46, pp. 173–178.)

(A) *Square from Open Column.*

1. Square on the Leading Company.

ON THE LEADING
COMPANY: FORM
SQUARE.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS.

On the word MARCH—

Q. (or D.) *MARCH.*

The leading Company stands fast, the flank files facing† outwards: and its Captain, Coverer, and Supernumeraries run round to the rear of the 2nd Company. [The 2nd Company, having closed on to the front, halts without any word; the 2 outward files on each flank facing outwards.]

If the Column is on the March: on the *Caution*, the Captain of the leading Company gives No. —: *Halt, dress.*

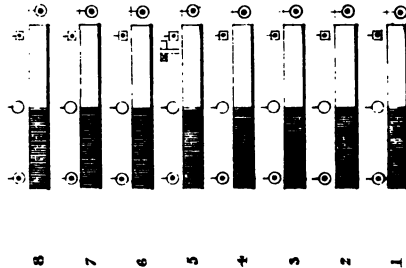
The Captains of the remaining (except the

† The outward front-rank man, and the outward-but-one rear-rank man, on each flank, make a *half* face outwards: the outward rear-rank man on each flank makes a *full* face outwards.

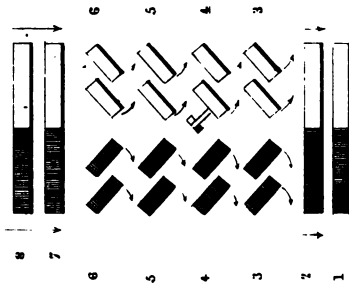
PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. N^o XXI. B)

A Battⁿ in 4 distance, Column forming Square on the leading Company.

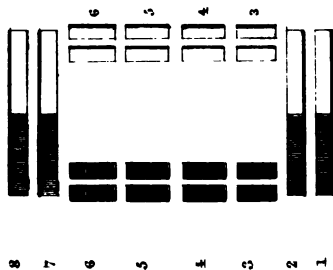
1. The Column.



II After the command "SECTIONS OUTWARDS".



III. The Square formed.



Officers are inside the Square in rear of their Sections.

2 rear) Companies, as they come up in succession to quarter distance, give *No. — : Sections outwards.* [The flank Sections, when they have wheeled the quarter circle outwards, halt without any word: the 2 centre Sections closing on them.]

The Captains, Coverers, and Supernumeraries of the 2 rear Companies, run into Square the moment the 3rd Company from the rear gets *Sections outwards*: the Captain of each, as it closes up, giving *No. — : Halt. Right-about face.* [The flank files face as described above for those of the 2 leading Companies.]

THE COLOURS.

Incline, during the march, towards the centre of the Company they are following: and when that Company gets *Sections outwards*, wheel to the left or right (according as Right or Left is in front), and halt in rear of the pivot Subdivision.

2. Square on the Rear Company.

ON THE REAR
COMPANY:
FORM SQUARE.
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

2. (or D.) MARCH.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS.

(1) *On the word FACE—*

The whole Column will face about.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The proper rear Company stands fast (the flank files facing as described in 1 for those of the leading Company): and its Captain, Coverer, and Supernumeraries run round to the rear of the proper front rank of the next Company. The Captain, Coverer, and Supernumeraries of the last-named Company run round to its present rear: the Company, having closed, halts without word of command; the flank files facing as explained in 1 for those of the 2nd Company.

If the Column is *retiring*: on the *Caution*, the Captain of the *present* leading Company gives *No. —: Halt, dress.*

The Captains of the remaining (except the 2 proper front) Companies, as they close in succession on the last halted Company, will each give *No. —: Front turn. Sections outwards.*

The Captains and Supernumeraries of the 2 proper front Companies, will run into Square the moment the 3rd Company (counting from the proper front) gets the word *Sections outwards*: the Captain of each, as it comes up to the Square, giving *No. —: Halt, front.*

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will incline, during the march, to the centre of the Company in whose proper rear it is moving: turning to the front with that Company, and wheeling up as in 1.

2. Square on the Centre.

(Suppose Right is front)—

ON THE LEFT-
CENTRE
COMPANY: FORM
SQUARE.

RIGHT WING:
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

Q. (or D.) MARCH.

On the word *MARCH*—

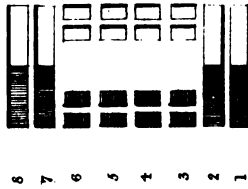
The Captain of the named Company will immediately give *No. —: Sections outwards.*

The Companies in rear of the named Company will proceed as in 1: the Wing that was faced about, as in 2.

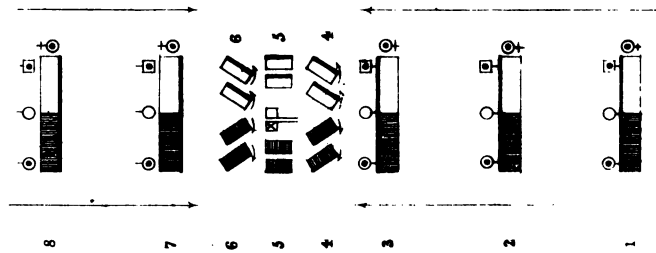
[When Left is in front, the formation will be on the Right-centre Company.]

If the Column is *taking ground to a flank by Fours*: the word will be ON THE LEFT- (or RIGHT-) CENTRE COMPANY: FORM SQUARE. *WINGS: INWARDS TURN*, on which the Captain of the named Company will give *Sections outwards*; the formation proceeding as above described.

IV. The Square formed.

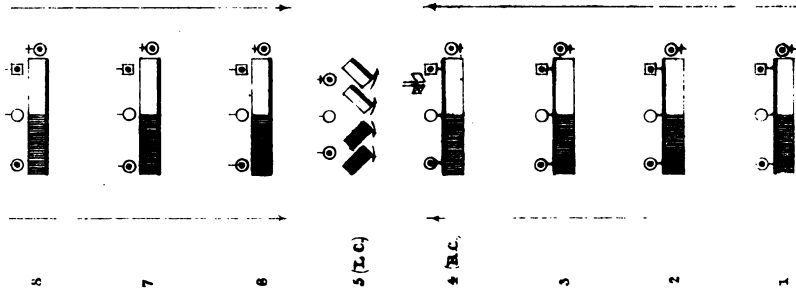


III. When 5 is in its place 4 & 6 are bringing sections outwards and the remaining Companies moving up to form Square.

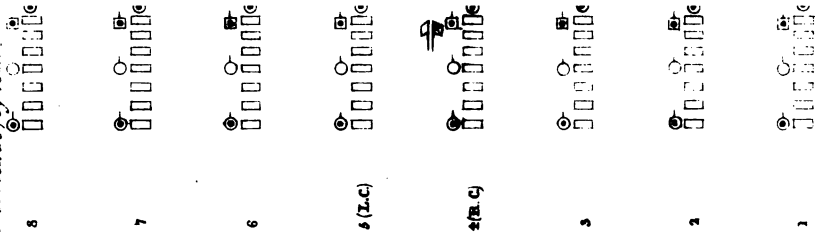


on the Centre.

II. After "WINGS INWARDS TURN"



I. The Column taking to a flank, by fours



11

12

13

(B) *Square from Quarter-distance Column: on the leading Company.*

ON THE LEADING
COMPANY:
FORM SQUARE.

Q. (or D.) MARCH.

SECTIONS
OUTWARDS.

Square is formed as in (A) 1: except that the *Battalion Commander* gives the word *SECTIONS OUTWARDS*, applying to all the side-face Companies, as the 2nd Company closes on the 1st†.

The Captain of the front Company, if the Column is on the March; and those of the 2 rear Companies in either case; will give the same word as in (A). 1.

THE COLOURS, on the *Caution*, close (or incline) to the centre of the Company they are following.

† A Quarter-distance Column will always form Square on its proper leading Company; and if required to form Square *while taking ground to a flank by Fours*, or *retiring*, will be ordered to turn to the front before the caution to form Square is given.

(C) *Square from DOUBLE COLUMN.*

ON THE TWO
LEADING
COMPANIES
[or SUBDIVISIONS]:
FORM SQUARE.

Q. (or D.) MARCH.

A Double Column consisting of 10 (or more) Companies, and a Double Column of Subdivisions, will form Square on their 2 leading Companies or Subdivisions respectively, as a single Column of Companies forms on its leading Company; except that the former will bring *Subdivisions* outwards. The Colour party will get to its place in Square by doubling round the flank of the 2 Companies (or Subdivisions) immediately in its rear.

COLUMN:
FOURS DEEP.
ON THE
CENTRE CLOSE:
Q. MARCH.

ON THE TWO
LEADING COM-
PANIES: FORM
SQUARE.
Q. MARCH.

A Double Column of Companies *less than 10 in number*, suppose 6, will form as follows:—The whole (except the Colour party, which will step back one pace and then stand fast) will form four-deep, and close to the centre. The 2 leading Companies, which will stand fast (or halt, if on

the March) will form the front face : the 2 next will move on, and when at *Subdivision* distance from the front, will wheel outwards by Companies : the 2 rear Companies, as they close on the flanks of the two side faces, will halt and face to the right-about.

In both cases the left-wing leaders will (as usual) give the necessary words.

For a Close Column forming Square, *see* p. 182.

2. *To resist Cavalry.*

PREPARE FOR
CAVALRY.

READY.

On the Caution—The 2nd and 4th ranks lock up.

On the word READY—The 2 front ranks all round the Square kneel, but do not cock till required to fire ; the standing ranks come to the ‘ready’, and cock. (*See* pp. 56, 223.)

[For the Firing words (given by the Battalion Commander): *see* APPENDIX I. If no Firing words are given, the kneeling ranks will rise at the command *ORDER ARMS*.]

3. *To move the Square.*

THE SQUARE
WILL ADVANCE
(RETIRE, or MOVE
TO THE —).

INWARDS
FACE.

Q. MARCH.

HALT: FRONT.

On the word FACE—The face of direction stands fast ; those on either side of it facing into the named direction, the face in rear of it facing to the right-about : and on the word *MARCH*, the Square moves off.

A Square if advancing, or moving to the Right, will march by the left ; if retiring, or moving to the Left, will march by the right : the Serjeant-major, on the directing flank, regulating the direction.

SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

No. XXXI.—*A Battalion in Square re-forming Column, or Double Column.*

(F. E. III., SEC. 47, p. 178.)

(A) *Re-forming Column.*

[On the word COLUMN—The rear Sections of side faces step back to wheeling distance, the pivot men facing to the proper front of the Column. The flank men of the two leading Companies also face to the front; those of the two rear Companies, to the rear.]

RE-FORM
COLUMN.

2. MARCH.

FIELD OFFICERS.

The Senior Major, having moved out of the Square, places himself in front of the pivot flank of the leading Company, to correct the Captains' covering. The other mounted Officers move to the reverse flank of the Column, to superintend the parallel dressing of the Companies.

CAPTAINS.

On the word MARCH—

The Captains instantly run out, and take up their covering on the pivot flank of their Companies. The Captain of the 2nd Company will then stand fast.

The Captain of the leading Company, having advanced to quarter distance, gives *No. — : Halt, dress.* The Captain of each of the two rear Companies, as he acquires quarter distance from the Company in his proper front, will give *No. — : Halt, front : dress.*

The remaining Captains, when their Sections have wheeled back into Company, will each give *No. — : Halt dress.*

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party steps back with the Section it covered in the Square: wheels back: and closes in rear of the usual files from the pivot flank.

(B) *Re-forming Double Column.*

1. Double Column of Companies.

RE-FORM
COLUMN.
Q. MARCH.
*[COLUMN:
FROM THE
CENTRE
RE-FORM
TWO-DEEP:
Q. MARCH.]

If the Double Column consists of 10 (or more) Companies, and has therefore formed Square as a single Column (*see* p. 170), it will be re-formed into Double Column as in (A): except that the side faces will wheel back by Subdivisions instead of Sections; and that the 2 front and 4 rear Companies will move off to Subdivision, instead of Section, distance. The Colour party will get to its place in Column by doubling round the flank of the two Companies immediately in its front.

If, however, the Double Column consists of less than 10 Companies, and has formed Square accordingly (*see* p. 173):—On the word *Q. MARCH*, the 2 front Companies (the flank men of which, will face to the front on the *Caution*) stand fast; the side faces wheel back by Companies into Column; and the 2 rear Companies move back, halting and fronting when at Subdivision distance.

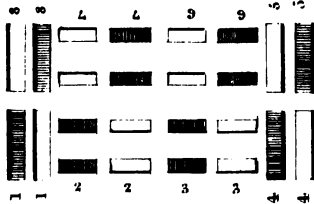
*The whole are then formed Two-deep.

2. Double Column of Subdivisions.

The Column will be re-formed as in (A). The Colour party will double round the flank of the two Subdivisions immediately in its front.

In both cases, the left-wing leaders will (as usual) give the necessary words.

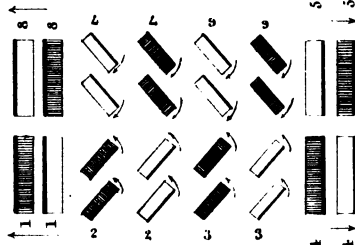
PART 2. BATTALION DRILL. No XXXI.



I. After the Caution.

When the rear sections of side faces have stepped back to wheeling distance.

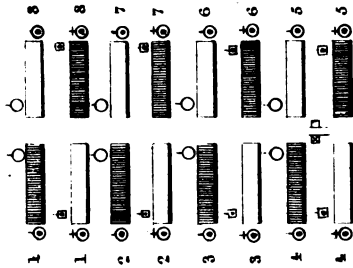
104



II. After the command "Q. MARCH"

The sections of side faces wheeling backwards, & the 2 centre subdivisions of the front face & the 4 subdivisions composing the rear face moving off to $\frac{1}{4}$ distance.

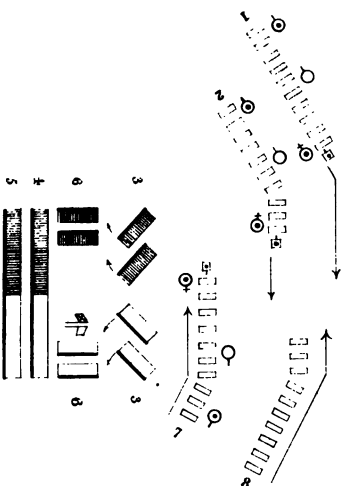
When a Square formed from double column of Subdivisions on the 2 centre Subdivisions, re-forms double column.



III. The Double column re-formed.

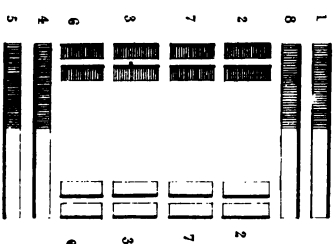
105

I. When 4 and 5 are in their places and 3 has got the word "Front turn — Sections outward."



II. The Square formed.

Note. The Square will form Column as in No. XXXI.



SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

No. XXXII.—*A Battalion in Line forming Square on any named Company: and reforming Line.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 48, p. 180.)

[This Square may be formed in rear of any Company; but the formation in rear of the Left-centre Company is the most convenient. When two Companies meet, they reverse the rule of the Road, and pass each other left arm to left arm.]

(Suppose a Battalion of 8 Companies.)

(A) *Forming Square.*

ON THE
LEFT-CENTRE
COMPANY:
FORM SQUARE.

FOURS
INWARDS.

Q. MARCH.

(1) *On the Caution—*

The Captain of the left-centre Company steps back into the place he will occupy in the Square.

(2) *On the word INWARDS—*

Each of the other Captains places himself on the pivot flank of his leading four.

(3) *On the word MARCH—*

The Companies in fours step off.

The right-centre Company (No. 4) will move close along the rear of the left-centre; and, when it is parallel to that Company, its Captain will give No. 4: *Halt, front*; and will fall back into his place in Square.

No. 6 will move into Column at quarter distance in rear of No. 4: and its Captain will then give No. 6: *Front turn. Sections outwards.*

Nos. 3, 7, and 2 will then in succession move into Column, each at quarter distance from the last-formed Company: their Captains respectively giving *No.* — : *Front turn. Sections outwards.*

No. 8 will meet, and pass close in rear of, No. 2: and when in Column will get the word from its Captain, *No. 8: Halt, front. Right-about face.*

Lastly, No. 1 will move into Column close along the proper rear of No. 8: its Captain giving the same word as the Captain of the latter. [The Captain and Supernumeraries of No. 1 should run into Square before No. 2 gets *Sections outwards.*]

THE COLOURS.

- (1) *On the word SQUARE*—The Colour party will step back three paces.
- (2) *On the word INWARDS*—It will face to the left.
- (3) *On the word MARCH*—It will step off: halting and fronting in rear of No. 4.

To move the Square in any direction, or to resist Cavalry: *see* page 174.

(B) *Re-forming Line.*

The Square will be formed into Column (the formation proceeding, in all respects, as described in No. XXXI.): and then deployed, the Companies forming fours outwards and moving out to their original positions (*see* No. XXIII.).

[† If Line is to be formed *on the original align-*

† RE-FORM
COLUMN.

Q. *MARCH.*

DEPLOY ON
No. — COMPANY.

REMAINING
COMPANIES:

† If the Battalion after forming, is to remain in, Column: the Column will be re-numbered from the front.

FOURS
OUTWARDS.

Q. MARCH.

STEADY.

ment, the left-centre Company will—before the *Caution* to form Column is given—be cautioned to STAND FAST.]

Note.—Unless it is necessary to open fire immediately, Square is not usually formed at once from Line as described above : but either Column is formed (as in No. XII.) on any named Company, and Square then formed on the leading Company (as in No. XXX.); or, the Line is wheeled into open Column, and Square then formed (as in No. XXX.) on the leading, or on either centre, Company.

SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

No. XXXIII.—*A Battalion in Line or Echelon forming Company Squares: and reforming Line or Echelon.*

(F. E. III., Sec., 49, p. 181.)

1. *Forming Squares.*

[On their Captain's word '*March*'—The 2nd Section of each Company, if *Riflemen*, fix swords. The men of Nos. 1, 3, and 4, Sections move into Column with shouldered Arms: ordering Arms (and, if *Riflemen*, fixing swords), independently, as they halt and front in their places.]

FORM COMPANY
SQUARES.*[WHEEL INTO
ECHELLON.]

CAPTAINS.

On the word SQUARES—

Each Captain will give his Company:—

*No. —: Form Close Column of Sections.**Q. March.*

*He will then (together with the Supernumeraries, &c.) move into the centre of the Column, and give—

Prepare for Cavalry—Ready.

For the firing words given by each Captain when *COMMENCE FIRING* is sounded: see APPENDIX, page 223.

* If, when the Companies have (from *Line*) formed Columns of Sections, the Battalion Commander gives *WHEEL INTO ECHELLON*:—Each Captain will give his Company *Columns*: *On the move, Right wheel: Q. March*: and when it has wheeled the eighth of a circle, *Halt, dress*.

When *CEASE FIRING* is sounded : each Captain, his men having completed their loading, will give—

Re-form Column.

and both Captain and Supernumeraries will take post on the flanks of Sections : *see* No. XX. of PART I.

2. Re-forming Line or Echelon.

[If the Columns have been wheeled into echelon, they will, before being re-formed into line, be wheeled back into their former positions by command of their Captains, on the Caution *WHEEL BACK INTO LINE*. The Captains' words will be *To the right face*. Column : *On the move, Left wheel : Q. March.—Halt, front : dress.*]

[WHEEL BACK
INTO LINE.]

RE-FORM LINE
(or ECHELLON).

Q. MARCH.

On the Caution to re-form Line (or Echelon)—

Nos. 1, 3, and 4 Sections of each Company face outwards : *see* page 56.

On the word MARCH—

The original formation is resumed.

[Swords will be unfixed by word of command.]

SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

No. XXXIV.—*A Close Column forming Square: and the Square being re-formed into Column.*

(F. E. III., SEC. 50, p. 182.)

[This Square is formed when the Battalion is in close Column, and has not time to open to quarter distance.]

1. *Forming Square.*

(Suppose Right in front.)

FORM SQUARE.

*FOURS
OUTWARDS.**Q. MARCH.*(1) *On the word FOURS OUTWARDS—*

The 2 front and 2 rear Companies stand fast: the remainder forming fours outwards by Subdivisions.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The fours close up. No. 2 steps back a pace and a half; No. 1, three paces. The 2nd Company from the rear, and the rear Company (the latter having first closed up a pace and a half), will face to the right-about.

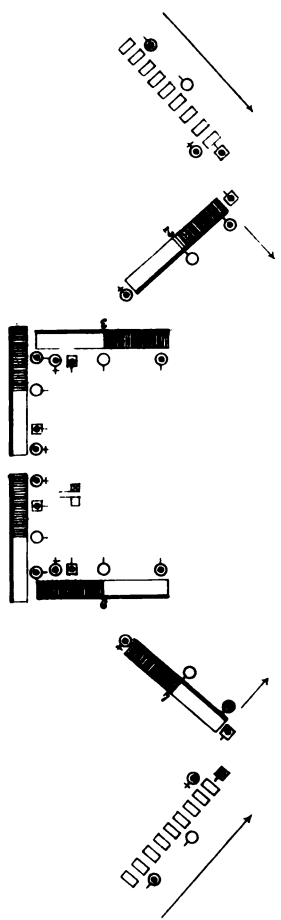
2. *Re-forming Column.*RE-FORM
COLUMN.*Q. MARCH.*(1) *On the word COLUMN—*

The fours step back to their proper distance.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The fours front, and form two-deep. Nos. 1 and 2 Companies then move off to their original distance. The Captain of the rear-but-one Company gives *No. — : Front :* as does also the Captain of the rear Company, when the latter has retired to its original distance.

11. When 3 and 6 have wheeled the $\frac{1}{2}$ circ^e & are in Square, & the remaining Companies are coming up into Square.



I. On the word "FORM SQUARE"



SECTION VII.—SQUARES.

No. XXXV.—*A Battalion in Line forming Square Two-deep : and re-forming Line.*

(F. E. III., Sec. 52, p. 184.)

This Square being used for protecting baggage, &c. against Infantry, is commonly termed a *Baggage Square*.

[*On the word SQUARE*—The 2 centre Companies stand fast : the flank Companies face inwards ; the remainder to the right-about. *On the word MARCH*—The 2 centre Companies close inwards 4 paces each : the 2 flank Companies move off to form the rear face ; the remainder move up in echelon, and form the flank faces ; of the Square.]

1. *Forming Square.*

ON THE
TWO CENTRE
COMPANIES,
TWO-DEEP:
FORM SQUARE.
Q. *MARCH.*

CAPTAINS.

(1) *On the word SQUARE*—

The Captain of the left-centre Company takes 3 paces to his rear : the Captain of the left-flank Company places himself on the left of his leading file : the remaining left-wing Captains face to the right-about.

All the right-wing Captains change flanks : the Captain of the right-flank Company then placing himself on the right of his leading file ; the remainder falling in on their new flanks aligned with the rear rank and facing to the rear. The right-centre Captain then takes 3 paces to his proper rear, and fronts.

(2) On the word MARCH—

The 2 centre Companies close to each other, and halt : without word of command.

The Captains of the Companies that faced about, when their Companies have wheeled inwards into echelon, will give *No. — : Forward :* and, as they respectively reach the outer flank of the Company last formed in Square, will give *Right wheel* or *Left wheel* according as they belong to the right or left Wing ; moving, at the same time, into Square : their Companies having wheeled up square with the 2 centre Companies, they will each give *No. — : Halt, front : dress.*

The Captains of the 2 flank Companies lead them up to form the rear face of the Square : and as the leading flanks of those Companies meet, respectively give *No. — : Halt. Rear face.*

SUBALTERNS.

On the Caution—

The Supernumeraries of all (except the 2 centre and 2 flank) Companies face to the right-about : the right-wing Lieutenants changing their flanks.

On the word MARCH—

The Supernumeraries of the 2 centre Companies close with them : those of the 2 flank Companies march in their usual places in file : the remainder move off in the proper rear of their Companies.

THE COLOURS.

On the word SQUARE—

The Colour party takes 2 paces to its rear, and then 8 side-paces to the left.

THE SQUARE
WILL ADVANCE
RETIRE, or MOVE
TO THE —.

— FACES:
FOURS
INWARDS.
— FACE:
RIGHT-ABOUT
FACE.

Q. MARCH.
HALT: FRONT.

2. To move the Square.

On the word MARCH—The Square will step off and march as directed for a Four-deep Square : see page 174.

On the word HALT: FRONT—The Square will halt, and all the Companies will face outwards ; the side faces re-forming Two-deep.

3. Re-forming Line.

RE-FORM LINE. FIELD OFFICERS.

Q. MARCH.

Move out of Square after the *aides* : and during the formation of the Line proceed as directed in No. XXII. p. 138.

CAPTAINS.

On the word MARCH—

The 2 centre Companies open out 4 paces each, by command of the left-centre Captain, to admit the Colours : and their Captains then dress them from the centre Serjeant (as in No. XXII. ⁽¹⁾).

The Captains of the side-face Companies, which will wheel to the left and right without word of command, give *No. — : Forward* when their respective Companies have wheeled into echelon : and lead them up into Line, as in No. XXII.

The Captain of each of the 2 flank Companies (which face outwards, on the *Caution*, without word of command), as soon as the side-face Company on his flank has wheeled clear of him, will give his Company *No. — : Form four-deep* : lead it across to the outward flank of the Company which

stands next him when in Line ; and will there halt, letting the men (who will then change their direction parallel to the alignment) pass him. When the last four reaches him, he will give *No. — : Halt, front : dress up :* dress the Company from the inward flank, and take post in Line.

THE COLOURS.

The Colour party will move up into its place in Line when the mounted Officers, and the Captains and Covering-serjeants of the 2 centre Companies, have moved out of the Square.

SECTION VIII.—INSPECTION OR REVIEW.

No. XXXVI.—*Inspection, or Review, of a Battalion.*

(F. E. VI., pp. 293—299.)

[The Battalion will be drawn up in Line at Open order, with the Officers out in front (see No. I., page 68): a Camp colour being placed at 80 or 100 paces in front of the centre.]

1. *Receiving the General.*

The Salute will commence when the General is 50 or 60 paces from the centre of the Battalion.

GENERAL SALUTE. CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS.

**PRESENT
ARMS.**

(1) *On the word PRESENT ARMS—*

Recover their swords at the 2nd motion of the 'Present'; and at the 3rd motion, lower them to the right (the edge to the left, and the point in the direction of the right foot), keeping the elbow close to the side; at the same time raising the left arm as high as the shoulder, and bringing the hand round (by a circular motion) over the peak of the shako, knuckles uppermost and fingers extended.

**SHOULDER
ARMS.**

(2) *On the word SHOULDER ARMS—*

Recover swords at the 1st motion of the 'Shoulder', and port at the 2nd.

† Or ROYAL SALUTE: see *Queen's Regulations*, p. 31.

THE COLOURS.

The Colours will be allowed to fly during the GENERAL, but will be dropped during the ROYAL SALUTE: see *Queen's Regulations*, p. 31. They will not be allowed to fly while the General is riding down the Line, nor will they be dropped when he passes.

When the General, having passed down the front and up the rear of the Line, is proceeding to the Camp colour, the ranks will be closed (as in No. I.): and the Battalion will then break into open Column Right in front (*see* page 85), preparatory to marching past.

2. *Marching past in Slow and Quick Time.*

[The 4 Points shown in the Plate will be placed by the Adjutant: the Saluting base, marked by Points 2 and 3, is four paces from the Camp colour. Staff Officers do not march past.]

(A) In Slow Time.**SLOPE ARMS.****MARCH PAST IN SLOW TIME.****SLOW MARCH.****FIELD OFFICERS.**

The Senior Major will march past in front of the 3rd Section of the leading Company, a little in rear of the Commanding Officer: the Junior Major and Adjutant follow 6 paces in rear of the Column, the former being on the right. All the mounted Officers will salute (by recovering their swords and dropping the point), as they approach the General.

CAPTAINS.

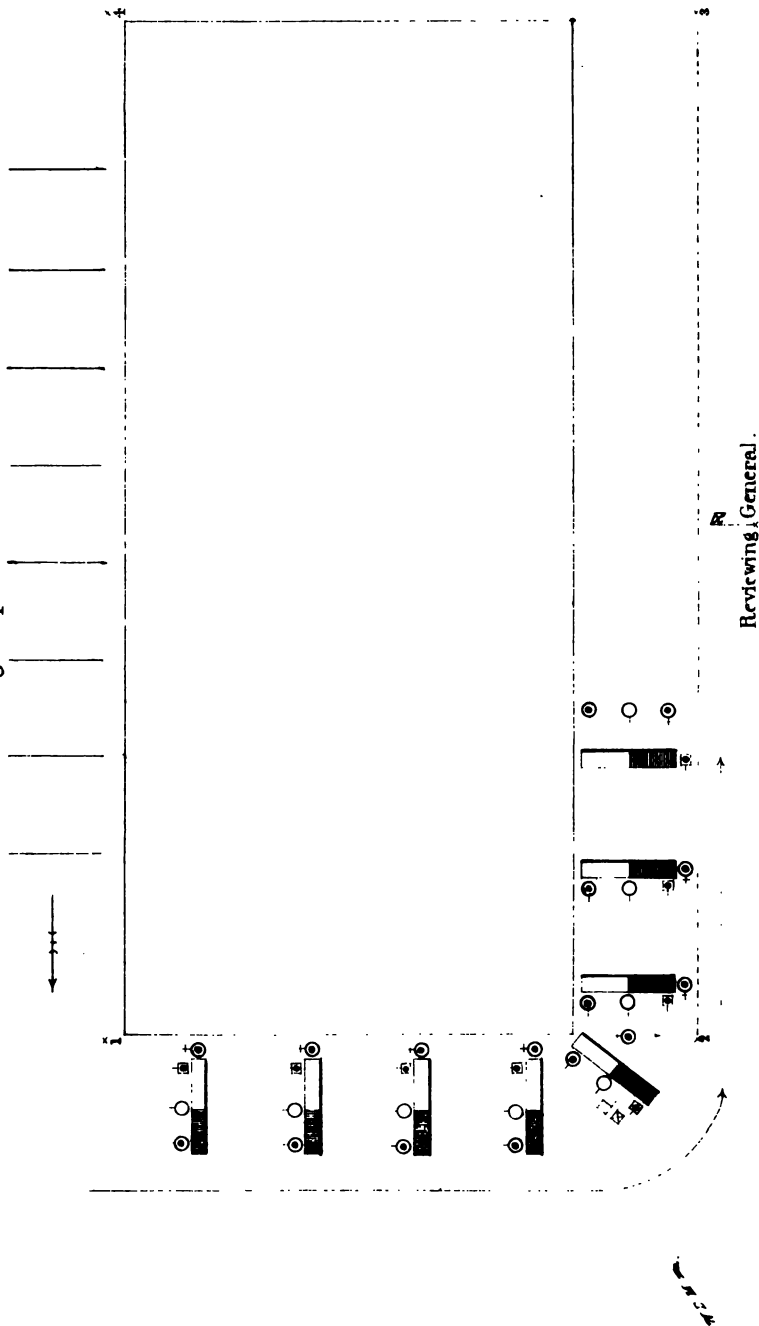
Each Captain in succession:—

(1) *On reaching Point 1—*

Will give the word *Left wheel*, and when his Company has wheeled square, *Forward*.

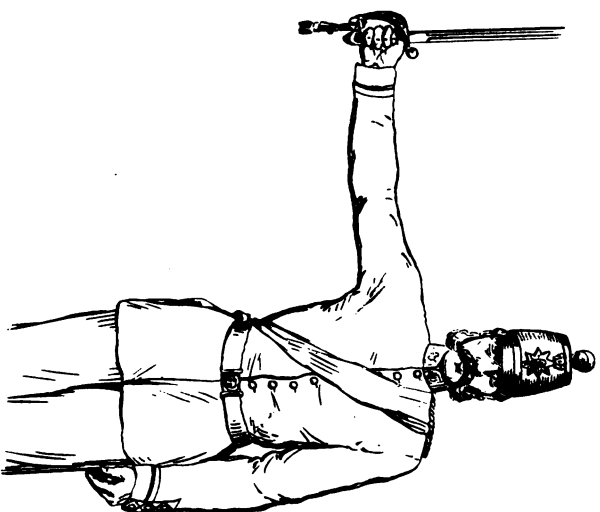
ALL INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN IS UNCLASSIFIED

Original position of the Column.

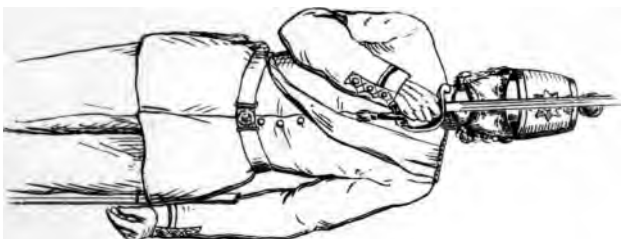


Salute in Marching past in Slow time.

189.



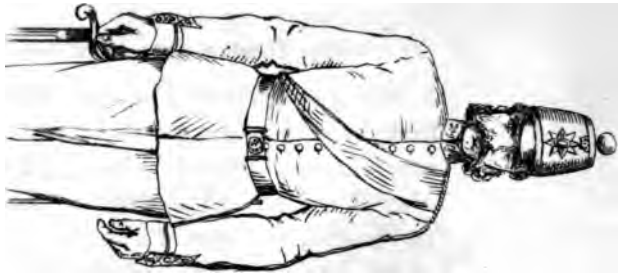
1st Motion



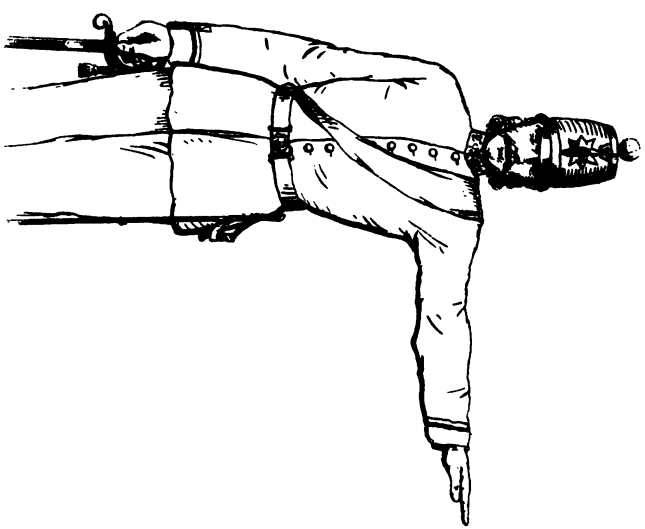
2nd Motion.



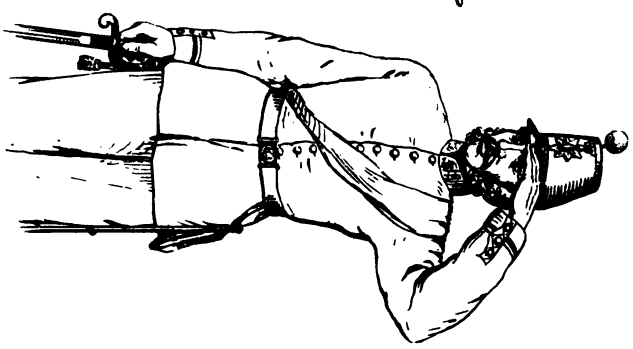
3rd Motion.



4th. Motion.



5th. Motion.



6th. Motion.

(2) *At wheeling distance from Point 2—*

Will give the word *Left wheel*, and change his flank by moving straight to his front (at a short pace) during the wheel: when the Company has wheeled square, and as the right foot comes to the ground, will give *Forward: By the right*: placing himself on that flank, just inside Point 2: and will then lead steadily on Point 3, in a line passing 4 paces from the Camp colour.

[Each Company, as it gets *Forward* at the completion of its 2nd wheel, will carry Arms without word of command.]

(3) *At 30 paces from the General—*

Will recover his sword; give the word *Rear rank take Open order*; move out in front of his Company; and bring his sword to the 'port'. See No. IV. of PART I.

(4) When at 12 paces from the General, will raise the fingers of the left hand as a signal to his Subalterns: and when at 10 paces, as his left foot comes to the ground, will commence the Salute.

[The Salute occupies 6 paces, viz. 4 for the motions of the sword, 2 for the motions of the left arm; commencing on the left foot, finishing on the right. Each Officer's head should be slightly turned to the General, while passing him. See Illustrations.]

(5) When 6 paces past the General, as the left foot comes to the ground, will recover and at the next pace will port his sword.

(6) *When 20 paces past the General—*

Will recover his sword; give the word *Rear rank take Close order*; and resume his place on the right of his Company. See No. IV. of PART I.

(7) *On reaching Point 3—*

Will give the word *Left wheel*: and turning to the right-about, resume his place on the left (the proper pivot) flank of his Company; passing by the rear, as usual, during the wheel. When the Company has wheeled square, will give *Forward: By the left*.

(8) *On reaching Point 4—*

Will give the word *Left wheel*: and, when his Company has wheeled square, *Forward*.

N.B.—Captains should take care to give their word *Left wheel* immediately they arrive at the wheeling points, although at that moment the Company in their front will only have completed two-thirds of its wheel. Otherwise, distance will be lost.

SUBALTERNS.

(1) *During the 2nd wheel of each Company—*

The Lieutenant changes flank.

(2) *On their Captain's word "Open order"—*

The Lieutenant and Ensign recover swords, move out in front of their Company (as in No. IV. of PART I.), port their swords, and glance their eyes to the Captain for the saluting signal.

(3) The Salute is performed as shown in the *Illustrations*: the time being taken from the Captain.

(4) *On their Captain's word "Close order"—*

They recover swords, turn to the left, and resume their places in rear (as in No. IV. of PART I.).

(5) *During the 3rd wheel of each Company—*

The Lieutenant changes flank.

THE COLOURS.

- (1) Change flank during the 2nd wheel.
- (2) *On the right-centre Captain's word "Open order"*
—Dress with the supernumerary rank, 3 paces from the rear rank: resuming their proper distance when "*Close order*" is given.
- (3) Change flank during the 3rd wheel.

[The Colours will be cast loose when passing the General: and will be lowered to persons entitled to that honour.]

[When all the Companies have passed the General, the Commanding Officer will give the word *SLOPE ARMS*.
BREAK INTO QUICK TIME. *QUICK*.]

(B) In Quick Time.

[A Battalion halted in open Column may be ordered to march past in *Quick*, without having previously marched past in *Slow*, time: the caution and command in that case being, MARCH PAST IN QUICK TIME. *Q. MARCH*.]

SLOPE ARMS.

**BREAK INTO
QUICK TIME.
*QUICK.***

FIELD OFFICERS.

March past as in *Slow* time: but do not salute unless the Battalion has *not* previously marched past in *Slow* time.

OFFICERS and **COLOURS** wheel and change flanks as in marching past in *Slow* time: but the Companies do not take *Open order*, nor do the Officers salute. The Colours will neither be cast loose nor lowered. [Officers' swords will be held by the gripe, and carried steadily against the shoulder. (G. O. 1834.)]

Note.—In marching past: the rear ranks, except when

—in Slow time—at Open order, will lock up to 21 inches from the front ranks. (*Circ. Mem.*, 19th July, 1859.)

BATTALION:
HALT.
LEFT WHEEL
INTO LINE.
STEADY.

Q. MARCH.

When the Column arrives on its original ground, it will be halted, and then wheeled into Line. See page 128.

3. *Manual and Platoon Exercise.*

[The Commanding Officer, having directed the men to *ORDER ARMS, UNFIX BAYONETS*, and *STAND AT EASE*, will give the *Caution* **MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISE, TAKING THE WORD FROM THE SENIOR MAJOR**: and will move to the rear of the Line.]

ATTENTION.
SHOULDER ARMS.
—
REAR RANK TAKE
OPEN ORDER:
MARCH.

OFFICERS AND
COLOURS: TAKE
POST OF EXERCISE
IN THE REAR.
Q. MARCH.

The Senior Major moves out to the front, and proceeds to give the annexed commands: the Junior Major, and Adjutant, remaining in the places they occupy at Close order.

CAPTAINS and SUBALTERNS.

(1) When the ranks are opened: as in No. I.

(2) *On the word* **REAR**—

Face to the right; bringing their swords to the 'recover' as the right foot is drawn to the rear.

(3) *On the word* **MARCH**—

Each Captain, passing round the right flank of his Company, moves to 3 paces in rear of the centre of its supernumerary rank: the Subalterns, passing by the left flank, move to their usual places in the supernumerary rank. Each Officer, as he arrives in his place, will halt, front (right-about), and carry his sword.

THE COLOURS.

Take post of exercise in rear with the Officers.

The Major will then put the Battalion through the Manual Exercise, and when that is finished, will close the ranks and proceed with the Platoon in slow and quick time : the Platoon being finished, he will order the men to shoulder, and will fall back to his place in Line.

The Captains, when the ranks are closed, take 2 paces to their front ; and then stand fast till the Major gives his last command **SHOULDER ARMS**. On that word they will recover their swords, move up into their places in Line, and carry swords.

At the end of the Review, the Battalion will, if required, be formed in Line at Open order on its original ground ; and then get the word—**THE LINE WILL ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER: SLOW MARCH:** being halted and ordered to Salute (as in 1) when 30 or 40 paces from the General.

SECTION VIII.—INSPECTION OR REVIEW.

No. XXXVII.—*Review of two (or more) Battalions formed in contiguous Columns at Quarter distance.*

(F. E. VI., pp. 299–302.)

. The words of command given by the Brigadier having been repeated by the Commanders of Battalions, the Brigadier will hold up his sword as a signal for the latter to give their executive words.

Brigadier's Word.

OFFICERS AND
COLOURS WILL
TAKE POST IN
REVIEW ORDER.

1. *Receiving the General.*

On the Brigadier's *Caution*: the Commander of each Battalion will give:—

OFFICERS & COLOURS WILL TAKE POST IN
REVIEW ORDER.

OFFICERS & COLOURS TO THE FRONT: *Q. MARCH.*

(1) *On the word FRONT—*

The Officers recover their swords.

(2) *On the word MARCH—*

The Officers and Colours move up to the front, and place themselves in line, 2 paces in front of the Column: the Colours being in the centre, and the Officers—sized from flanks to centre—equidistant from each other.

The Majors will be 2 paces in front of the line of Officers, dividing the distances between the Commanding Officer (who will be 3 paces in front of the Colours) and the flanks. The Adjutant will be on the left of the line of Officers: the Regimental Staff-officers, in rear of the Battalion.

Brigadier's Words.

**GENERAL
SALUTE.**

**THE BRIGADE
WILL SHOULDER.**

**OFFICERS AND
COLOURS WILL
TAKE POST WITH
THEIR
BATTALIONS.**

Battalion Commanders' words:—

*** GENERAL SALUTE**

(Signal)—

PRESENT ARMS.

THE BRIGADE WILL SHOULDER.

(Signal)—

SHOULDER ARMS.

**OFFICERS & COLOURS WILL TAKE POST WITH
THEIR BATTALIONS.**

OFFICERS & COLOURS TAKE POST:

(Signal)—

Q. MARCH.

(¹) *On the word POST*—The Officers face outwards from the centre, and the Colours face to the left.

(²) *On the word MARCH*—The whole move back to their places in Column.

2. *Marching past in Columns: at † Quarter distance.*

[Points will be placed by a Staff Officer, as they are placed for a single Battalion.]

Battalion Commanders' words:—

(¹) *On the Brigadier's word FOURS*—

**THE BRIGADE WILL TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT IN
FOURS.**

BATTALION: FOURS, RIGHT.

(Signal)—

Q. MARCH.

(²) *When the Battalion has cleared the 1st Point*—
FRONT TURN.

* The GENERAL SALUTE is given as in No. XXXVI., but without the ranks being opened.

† When a Brigade is to pass in *Open Column*, each Battalion will be halted on the completion of the wheel that brings it on to the Saluting alignment; and will then advance by successive Companies from the front at wheeling distance (see p. 113): after passing the General, it will close, on the march, to quarter distance (see p. 111).

(3) *Before the 1st Wheel commences—*

OFFICERS: CHANGE YOUR FLANKS.

(4) *At wheeling distance from Point 2—*

*LEFT WHEEL: DOUBLE. (When square)—FORWARD: ‡QUICK.—BY THE RIGHT.
CARRY ARMS.*

(5) *When the Battalion has passed the General—*

SLOPE ARMS.

(6) *At Point 3—*

BATTALION: LEFT WHEEL. DOUBLE. (When square)—FORWARD: ‡QUICK.—BY THE LEFT.

(7) *At Point 4—*

BATTALION: LEFT WHEEL. DOUBLE. (When square)—FORWARD: ‡QUICK.

‡ It may sometimes be necessary to continue at the Double for a short distance after the word *FORWARD*; to prevent crowding, or to correct distance. [An interval of 25 paces should be preserved between the Columns.]

The mounted Officers, only, will salute.

Officers change back to their original flanks at the word *BY THE LEFT*.

After marching past, the leading Column will be halted (at the Brigadier's *Caution*) by word of its own Commander, on the original alignment: and the remaining Columns halted in succession, by their Commanders, as they close upon the leading Column to 6 paces' interval.

The *mass* will then be wheeled into *line* of Columns, and the intended movements commenced.

At the end of the Review, the Columns will, if required, be formed on their original ground in Review order (*see* p. 194); and will then be ordered to advance in Slow time: being halted and ordered to salute when at a convenient distance from the General.

DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS IN BATTALION.

1. WHEN the Captain of a Company changes his flank, the Coverer (unless required to take a point) will change with him; passing, on all occasions, by the rear.

2. Whenever the Captain moves from the front rank (except for the purpose of changing his flank), the Coverer will take his place and preserve it till his return. When both the Captain and Coverer move out, during a formation in Line, the rear-rank man of the pivot file will move up into the Captain's place.

3. Coverers giving points for the formation of *Line*, will stand with recovered Arms, facing towards the point of *appui*: their inner arms marking the alignment. [This rule does not apply to the Coverer marking the outer flank of the *front* Company (Subdivision or Section) of an open Column wheeling into Line; who will stand as directed in No. 20, p. 208.]

In the formation of *Column* or *Echelon*: Coverers will give their points with shouldered Arms, facing in the direction of the new front. [This rule does not apply to the Serjeant (Covering or Supernumerary, as the case may be) giving the *base point for a Column* when the formation is on either flank Company; who will stand as directed in No. 12, p. 203.] (F. E., pp. 54, 92, 95.)

(a) In all Deployments and formations of *Line* on any one Company, the Coverer and senior supernumerary Serjeant of the Company of formation will be placed, as base points, opposite each of its flank files: when Line is formed on the centre of the Battalion, the Coverer of each centre Company will mark its outer flank, the front-rank centre Serjeant giving a 3rd (centre) base point. These base points will not fall into their places in Line till the Major's word **STEADY** at the completion of the formation. The Coverer of each of

the other Companies, as it arrives within 20 paces of its point of formation, will run out to mark where its outward flank will rest in Line; covering in the line established by the base points: and falling into his place in Line when the 2nd Company from his own gets *Eyes front*.

[The general (or Brigade) alignment, taken up by the Battalion *aides*, will be at arm's length from the line of Coverers. See p. 66.]

The Coverers, in giving their points, face to the point of *appui*. Thus; if the formation is on the right-flank Company, they face to the right: if on the left-flank Company, to the left: if on any central Company, or on the centre of the Battalion, inwards. The dressing and covering of all points will be corrected on the distant *aide*, by the Major nearest the point of formation; or by the Senior Major when the formation is on the centre of the Battalion.

N.B.—In formations from Subdivisions or Sections, each Coverer takes up distance for his whole Company.

(b) In the formation of *Column* from Line on any named Company:—If the formation is on either flank Company, and the named Company is to be the leading one of the Column, its Coverer will give the base point for the Column; placing himself 6 paces in front of, and facing towards, his Captain. [If the named Company is to be the rear one of the Column, its supernumerary Serjeant will give the base point, 6 paces in *rear* of the Captain.] The base point will stand fast till the Major's word **STEADY** on the completion of the formation.

When the formation is on any central Company (whether Right or Left is to be in front), the Coverer of the named Company will mark the future pivot flank of the Company which will form next in front of his own; covered on his Captain, but facing to the front.

The remaining Coverers run on when within 20 paces of the pivot flank of the Column, and take up their covering: see pp. 203–205.

Each Coverer marking the future pivot flank of a Company, will fall into his place in Column when that Company gets the word *Halt: front*.

✂ The following directions do not apply to the Coverer of the Officer on the left of the Line, unless he is specifically mentioned. By "the Supernumerary Serjeant" is meant the *senior* Supernumerary Serjeant.

[The references in the left-hand margin are to the pages of this book.]

SEC. I.—LINE MOVEMENTS.

1. Taking
Open order,
and resuming
Close order.
(p. 68.)

(A) Taking Open order.

F. E. III.,
p. 104.

On the word ORDER—The Coverer of each Company takes a pace of 21 inches to his left, into the place vacated by the right-hand rear-rank man.

On the word MARCH—He takes a side step of 21 inches to the right with his right foot, and a pace to the front with his left foot, into the Captain's place.

(B) Resuming Close order.

On the word MARCH—Each Coverer takes 2 paces to his rear, and 1 pace to his left, to let the supernumerary Officers through: and when they have passed and the Captain is in his place, takes one pace to his right, and a pace to the front into his place in Line.

2. Advancing
and Retiring
in Line.
(p. 70.)

The Coverers remain in their places in the proper rear rank, in both cases.

F. E. III.,
p. 106.

3. Dressing a
Battalion in
Line.
(p. 72.)

On the Caution—If the Line is to dress by the Left, each Coverer will make way for his Captain to pass; and will then move up on the right of the front rank of his Company.

F. E. III.,
p. 107.

On the word MARCH—The Coverers (including the Coverer of the Officer on the left of the Line) take the named number of paces straight to their front, face to the named flank, and cover. [A Field-officer will then dress them, and give STEADY.]

On the 2nd word STEADY—They resume their places in Line: the Captains making way for them to pass.

4. Advancing
and Retiring
by Wings.
(p. 74.)

Coverers are posted as in Line. No points are given when Line is re-formed on the leading Wing.

F. E. III.,
p. 108.

SEC. II.—FORMATIONS OF COLUMN FROM LINE.

6. A Line
wheeling into
Open Column.
(p. 85.)

(A) From the Halt.

F. E. III.,
pp. 135—137.

On the word FRONT—The Coverer whose Company will be the leading Company of the Column, runs to the rear to mark the spot where its wheeling flank will rest: facing in the direction of the new front, and raising his left arm.

On the word FACE—The remaining Coverers face to the right-about.

On the word MARCH—The Coverer of each (except the future leading) Company steps off in its proper rear rank: halting, fronting, and moving to his proper place in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank, at his Captain's word *Halt, front: dress*.

The Coverer of the leading Company falls back into his place in Column when that Company gets the word *Halt, front: dress*.

(B) On Moveable pivots.

During the Wheel—If the wheel is to the Right, each Coverer will move across; if to the Left, will fall back; to his proper place in Column.

7. A Battalion
moving in
Open Column
from either
flank along
the Rear.
(p. 88.)

Each Coverer leads the front rank of his Company, as usual, while it is moving by Fours to the rear of the Line: and at the word *Front turn*, moves to the rear of the 2nd file from the flank on which the Captain is marching.

F. E. III.,
p. 138.

8. A Battalion
advancing in
Open Column
from either
flank.
(p. 90.)

(A) Advancing by Companies.

F. E. III.,
p. 139.

On the Caution—If the advance is from the Right, the Coverer of the named Company changes his flank. The remaining Coverers:—If the advance is from the Right, move across to their places in Column during the 1st wheel: if the advance is from the Left, fall back into those places directly the word *MARCH* is given.

(B) Advancing by *Subdivisions* (or *Sections*).

On the Caution—The Coverer of the Company which is to lead the Column, changes with his Captain to the rear of the inner flank of his outward Subdivision (or Section).

On the word MARCH—He moves off in his proper place in Column.

The remaining Coverers move to their places in Column during the 1st wheel.

When these Movements are done on the March, *all* the Coverers move to their places in Column during the 1st wheel.

9. Advancing in Double Column from the Centre.
(p. 93.)

On the Caution—The Coverers of the 2 flank Companies mark the points on which the Companies (Subdivisions or Sections) of their respective Wings will make their 2nd wheel; both facing to the front, and the Coverer of No. 1 making allowance for the distance which the right-centre Company (Subdivision or Section) will have to incline to the left-centre, to fill the space vacated by the Colours.

F. E. III.,
p. 140.

The remaining Coverers (having changed flanks—if necessary—with their Captains, on the *Caution*) move to their places in Column during the 1st wheel.

The Coverers giving the wheeling points move off in their places in the Double Column, when their Companies (or their outer Subdivisions, or Sections) have completed their 2nd wheel.

(Suppose the Retreat by *Companies*)—

10. Retreating in Open Column from a Flank.
(p. 97.)

On the Caution—The Coverer of the flank Company in rear of which the Retreat is to be made, will fall back and give a point (at a distance

F. E. III.,
p. 143.

equal to the breadth of a Company and 3 paces) in rear of the next Company's Coverer: facing to the proper front. On this point the remaining Companies will make their 2nd wheel. If the retreat is to commence from the Right, each Coverer (except the Coverer giving the wheeling point) will change flank with his Captain.

During the 2nd wheel—All the Coverers (except the Coverer giving the wheeling point) change flanks.

The Coverer giving the wheeling point will march off in his place in the proper rear of his Company, at his Captain's word *March*.

[If the movement is by *Subdivisions* (or *Sections*), the Coverer giving the wheeling point will take distance accordingly.]

11. Retreating
in Double
Column from
both Flanks in
rear of the
Centre.
(p. 100.)

(Suppose the Retreat by Subdivisions)—

On the Caution—The Coverers of the 2 centre Companies will fall back and give the points for the 2nd wheels, at Subdivision distance and 3 paces in rear of the 2nd files from the outward flanks of the 2 centre Subdivisions: facing to the proper front. The remaining right-wing Coverers change flanks with their Captains.

During the 2nd wheel—All the Coverers (except those giving the wheeling points) change flanks.

The Coverers giving the wheeling points step off in the proper rear of the 2 centre Subdivisions, at the left-centre Captain's word *March*.

[If the movement is by *Companies* or *Sections*, the Coverers giving the wheeling points will take distance accordingly.]

When either of the above movements is effected by the Companies (or Subdivisions) facing, or forming Fours:—The point, or points, will be given close in rear of the Line: the remaining Coverers lead

F. E. III.,
p. 145.

their respective Companies (or rear Subdivisions) while in file or fours, and at the word *Rear turn* place themselves in the proper rear of the 2nd file from the new pivot flank.

12. Formation of Column on any named Company.
(p. 104.)

(A) In front or rear of the Right-flank Company.

F. E. III.,
p. 147.

N.B.—The Serjeant (Covering or Supernumerary, as the case may be) who is giving *the base point for the Column* when the formation is on either flank Company, will stand fast till the Major's word *STEADY* at the completion of the formation. Each Coverer marking the *future pivot flank of a Company* will fall into his place in Column when that Company gets the word '*Halt : front.*'

(1) *If Right is to be in front.*

On the Caution—The Coverer of the named Company moves across by the *front*; and places himself, with recovered Arms, 6 paces in front of, and facing towards, his Captain.

On the word RIGHT—The Coverer of No. 2 will step back and mark the spot where the left of his Company will rest in Column: covering on the Captain and Coverer of No. 1.

The remaining Coverers place themselves, as usual, in front of their leading fours.

On the word MARCH—The Companies in fours step off. Each Coverer in succession, when within 20 paces of the pivot flank of the Column, will run on to take covering and distance for his own Company, in rear of the pivot flank of that last formed.

(2) *If Left is to be in front.*

On the Caution—The *Supernumerary* Serjeant of No. 1 will give the base point, with recovered Arms, 6 paces in rear of its Captain.

On the word RIGHT—The Coverer of No. 1 will take up his own distance in front of his Captain;

cover on him and the supernumerary Serjeant ; and face to the right-about : marking the future pivot flank of No. 2.

The remaining Coverers place themselves, as usual, in front of their leading fours.

On the word MARCH—The Companies in fours step off. Each Coverer, in succession, when within 20 paces of the line of Coverers, will run on to mark the future pivot flank of the Company which will form in front of his own ; covering on the rear base, and then facing to the right-about.

(B) In front or rear of the Left-flank Company.

(¹) *If Right is to be in front.*

On the Caution—The Coverer of the named Company changes flank with his Captain ; and the Supernumerary Serjeant of that Company then marks the base point, in rear of the Captain, as in A⁽³⁾.

On the word LEFT—The Coverer of the named Company marks the future pivot flank of that which will form next in his front ; as in A⁽²⁾.

The remaining Coverers proceed as in A⁽²⁾.

(²) *If Left is to be in front.*

On the Caution—The Coverer of the named Company marks the base point, 6 paces in front of his Captain, as in A⁽¹⁾.

On the word LEFT—The Coverer of the Company next to the named one steps back to mark the spot where the right of his Company will rest in Column.

The remaining Coverers proceed as in A⁽¹⁾.

(C) On any Central Company.

On the Caution—The Coverer of the named Company (whether Right or Left is to be in front) will mark the future pivot flank of the Company which will form, in the Column, next in front of his own. He will cover on his Captain, placing himself square with the Line, and will then face to the right-about.

On the word INWARDS—The Coverer whose Company will stand next in rear of the named one, steps back to mark its future pivot flank.

The remaining Coverers on the *right* of the named Company, if Right is to be in front act as in A⁽¹⁾: if Left, as in A⁽¹⁾. Those on the *left* of the named Company, if Right is to be in front act as in A⁽¹⁾: if Left, as in A⁽¹⁾.

(D) Column on any named Company facing to the Rear.

On the Caution—The Coverer of the named Company, if Left is to be in front, changes flank with his Captain. While his Company is being countermarched by files, he will proceed as in No. XV., of PART I., page 45.

The *Supernumerary* Serjeant of the named Company, if it is either of the *flank* Companies, will give the base point for the Column: if a *central* Company, will mark the future pivot flank of that which will form next in front of his own.

The remaining Coverers:—

(*Suppose the formation on a central Company*)—

- ⁽¹⁾ If Right is to be in front, the Coverers on the original *right* of the named Company will take up covering and distance in the Column for the Company which will stand next in front of their

own: those on the original *left*, for their own Company.

^(c) If *Left* is to be in front: *vice versa*.

[When a halted *Double Column* is formed from *Line*, the Coverer of the left-centre Company will give a base point in front of his Captain. When the Column is to be formed of Subdivisions, the Supernumerary Serjeant of each Company will take up covering and distance for its rear Subdivision.]

SEC. III.—COLUMN MOVEMENTS.

13. Forming
Close or Quar-
ter-distance
Column from
any more open
Column.
(p. 110.)

(a) Closing to the Front.

F. E. III.,
p. 116.

On the Caution—The Coverer of the leading Company will give a base point; placing himself 6 paces in front of, and facing towards, his Captain; and covering on the line of Captains. He will resume his place in Column when the Major who has been superintending the covering gives *STEADY*.

(b) Closing on the Rear.

On the Caution—The Coverer of the rear Company will place himself 6 paces in rear of his Captain; covering, and resuming his place, as directed in (a) for the Coverer of the leading Company.

[If the Closing is on a central Company, no base point will be given.]

14. A Close
or Quarter-
distance Co-
lumn opening
out.
(p. 112.)

(a) Opening from the Front.

F. E. III.,
p. 118.

On the Caution—The Coverer of the leading Company proceeds as in No. 13^(c).

[When the ground is rough:—Each of the other Coverers in succession will run out when the Company in his present rear is halted; and, placing himself clear of the flank of the Column,

will mark the proper distance for his own Company: falling into his place in Column when his Captain gives *Halt, front: dress,*]

(b) Opening from the Rear.

On the Caution—The Coverer of the rear Company proceeds as in No. 13^(b).

[In opening from a central Company, no base point will be given.]

15. A Close or Quarter-distance Column wheeling on a fixed pivot.
(p. 115.)

On the Caution—The Coverer of the leading Company runs out to mark the spot where the outward flank of the Column will rest when the wheel is completed: resuming his place in Column at the word COLUMN: HALT.

F. E. III.,
p. 124.

[When a Column wheels on a *Moveable pivot*, the Coverer of the leading Company does not move out.]

16. A Close or Quarter-distance Column Counter-marching by Subdivisions round the Centre.
(p. 119.)

(a) From the Halt.

On the Caution—The Coverers of the front and rear Companies will mark the points on which the pivot and reverse Subdivisions, respectively, will wheel: the former placing himself in front of the inner file of his reverse Subdivision, the latter in rear of the inner file of his pivot Subdivision: and both facing to the centre of the Column. [They will resume their places in Column on the word HALT, FRONT: DRESS.]

F. E. III.,
p. 127.

(b) On the March.

On the word RIGHT-(OR LEFT-) ABOUT TURN—The Coverers of the front and rear Companies give their points as in (a): resuming their places in Column on the word FRONT TURN.

17. Changing the Order of a Column.
(p. 121.)

Each Coverer steps short while his Company is moving out of the old Column: taking the Lieutenant's place when that Officer changes his flank at the Captain's word *Front turn*.

F. E. III.,
p. 129.

18. Changing the Order of a Column on a Road.
(p. 123.)

Each Coverer leads the front rank of his Company, as usual, while it is moving in fours to the front: moving to his place in rear of the 2nd file from the new pivot flank when his Captain gives *Front form Company*.

F. E. III.,
p. 130.

19. A Column taking ground to a flank.
(p. 125.)

(a) By Fours.

F. E. III.,
p. 131.

In *close* Column, the Coverer of each Company, if on its leading flank, will march at the head of the 2nd rank. See page 62.

When an open Column moves into an *Alignment by Fours*, the Coverer of its leading Company takes his distance from the Battalion *aide* at the point of formation on which the Column originally marched: each of the remaining Coverers will take up distance and covering for the pivot flank of his Company.

(b) By Subdivisions (or Sections).

Each Coverer will march, as usual, in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank of his leading Subdivision (or Section).

In *Echelon* of Subdivisions (or Sections), each Coverer retains his position.

SEC. IV.—FORMATION OF LINE FROM COLUMN.

20. Wheeling into Line from Open Column.
(p. 128.)

(A) From the Halt.

F. E. III.,
p. 99.

On the word LINE—The Coverer of the leading Company runs out to mark the spot where its wheeling flank will rest in Line; standing (with shouldered Arms, and the left arm raised) facing the new front, aligned with the pivot men. [He will fall into his place in Line when his Captain gives *Eyes front*.]

Each of the other Coverers :—

On the word LINE—If Right is in front, places himself on the right of his Company ; if Left is in front, stands fast.

On the word MARCH—If Right is in front, wheels with his Company : if Left is in front, moves up to the right of his Company during the wheel, and preserves his Captain's place : falling back, in both cases, to the right of the rear rank of his Company when his Captain gives *Eyes front*.

(B) On Moveable pivots.

Each Coverer, if Right is in front, will move across (by the rear) ; if Left is in front, will move up ; to his place in Line, during the wheel.

11. Forming
Line to the
Front from
Open Column.
(p. 130.)

(A) From the Halt.

(a) *Line on the leading Company.*

(Suppose Right in front)—

F. E. III.,
p. 152.

On the Caution : All the Coverers (except the Coverer of the leading Company) change flanks.

The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company will mark the base points : the former in front of its left, the latter in front of its right, flank ; and both facing to the right (the point of *appui*). They will not move to their places in Line till the Major's word *STEADY*, at the completion of the formation.

Each of the other Coverers :—

On the word WHEEL—Will place himself in rear of, and with his back to, the 8th file from the right flank of his Company ; and having taken the named number of paces to the rear, along the circumference of the circle of which the

pivot man of the Company is the centre (*see Intro'. Obs.*, page 5), will halt and front, in line with the pivot man. [The pivot man will have faced in the direction that the Company will face at the completion of the wheel.] Each Coverer, when his Captain (having halted and dressed his Company) gives *Eyes front*, will fall in on the left of his front rank.

On the 2nd word MARCH—The Companies in echelon step off: each Coverer, as he arrives within 20 paces of the alignment, running out, and covering (on the base points) at the point where the left of his Company will rest in Line: and falling into his place when the 2nd Company from his own has formed up in Line, been dressed, and got the word *Eyes front*.

[When the Column is Left in front:—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company will give the base points: the former in front of its *right*, the latter in front of its *left*, flank; both facing to the left (in that case, the point of *appui*). The Coverer of each of the other Companies will step his 4 paces from the 8th file from its *left*, and will march (while in echelon) on, and will run out to mark, its *right* flank.]

N.B.—If the Line is to be formed *obliquely* to the front of the Column:—The leading Company will first be wheeled back, on its reverse flank, into the required direction: the remainder will then be wheeled back into echelon; their Coverers taking, in *addition to the usual 4 paces*, half the number of paces wheeled back by the leading Company. If the leading Company is wheeled up, the remaining Coverers will proceed as in No. 22.

(b) *Line on the rear Company.*

Each (except the rear) Company having been faced to the right-about, its Coverer will

proceed as in (a). The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the rear Company give the base points, as in (a).

(c) *Line on any central Company.*

The Coverers in rear of the named Company proceed as in (a): those in its front, as in (b). The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant giving the base points in front of the named Company, will place themselves, the former opposite to its left, the latter opposite to its right; and will face inwards.

(B) *Line, on the March, on the leading Company.*

During the wheel into Echelon—The Coverer of each (except the leading) Company places himself on its 'outward' flank. The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company run out to give the base points (as in the same formation from the Halt); when its Captain gives *Halt: dress* [or, if the Column is marching to the Rear, *Halt, front: dress.*]

The remaining Coverers, as they come up in succession to 20 paces from the alignment, run out, as usual, to take up their covering in the line of points.

2. An Open Column forming Line to the reverse flank. (p. 136.)

On the Caution—The Coverer of each Company steps up into his Captain's place, when the latter changes flank. The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company, when its Captain gives *Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*, run out and mark the base; both facing towards the Captain, the Coverer taking the flank furthest from him. They will take post in Line, as usual, on the Major's word **STEADY** at the completion of the Movement.

The Coverer of each of the other Companies

F. E. III.,
p. 157.

will march on its reverse flank till within 20 paces of his ground, when he will run out (as usual) to take up his covering in the line of Coverers.

[Columns of Subdivisions (or Sections) will be formed to the reverse flank in like manner: Coverers taking distance, as usual, for their whole Companies. (See p. 37.).]

23. Forming Line to the Front from a Double Column on the March.

(p. 138.)

(Suppose a Double Column of *Subdivisions*)—

The Coverer of each of the 2 centre Companies, when his inner Subdivision is halted, will give a base point where the outward flank of his whole Company will rest in Line; facing to the centre of the Battalion. They will both take post in Line, as usual, at the Major's word **STEADY** on the completion of the formation.

[The centre Serjeant will give a centre base point at arm's length from the centre *aide*; facing to the right.]

The remaining Coverers of each Wing run out (as usual) to take up covering in the line of Coverers: each allowing distance for his whole Company, and covering on the central base points.

[When a Double Column is required to form Line from the Halt, without advancing the 2 front Companies (Subdivisions or Sections), it will be closed to quarter distance, and then deployed: Coverers proceeding as in No. 25.]

F. E. III.,
p. 159.

24. A Double Column forming Line to a Flank.

(p. 141.)

(Suppose a Double Column of *Subdivisions* forming Line to the Right)—

(A) *On the March.*

On the word LINE—The Supernumerary Serjeant of No. 1 marks the right of the intended Line. Each right-wing Coverer immediately runs out to mark where the left of his whole Company will rest in Line; facing to the right.

F. E. III.,
p. 161.

The left-wing Subdivisions will form successively to their reverse flank (*see* page 37): the Coverers running out, as usual, to take up covering for their whole Companies.

(B) *From the Halt.*

The Coverers of the named Wing proceed as directed in No. X. of PART I., page 33, except that they will face to the point of *appui* with Arms at the 'recover': the remainder, as the left-wing Coverers in (A).

SEC. V.—DEPLOYMENTS.

(A) *On the leading Company.*

(Suppose Right in front)—

F. E. III.,
p. 163.

25. A Close
or Quarter-
distance
Column
Deploying
into Line on
any named
Company.
(p. 143.)

On the Caution—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the leading Company will mark the base points: the former in front of its left, the latter in front of its right, flank; and both facing to the right.

On the word LEFT—The Coverer of No. 2 will run out to mark the left of his Company, covering on the base points.

Each of the remaining Coverers leads the front rank of his Company while in fours; running out (as usual) when within 20 paces of the alignment, to mark where its outward flank will rest in Line.

[If the Column is Left in front; the base points face to the *left*, and the Coverers mark the *right* of their respective Companies.]

(B) *On the rear Company.*

(Suppose Right in front)—

On the Caution—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the rear Company will move up to the front of the Column, and give the base points close in front of No. 1; the former placing himself on the right of that Company,

the latter on its left, and both ~~facing~~ to the left (the point of *appui*).

The remaining Coverers change flanks on the *Caution*: and, during the formation, proceed as in (A).

[If the Column is Left in front, the base points face to the *right*, and the Coverers mark the *left* of their Companies.]

(C) *On a central Company.*

On the Caution—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the named Company give the base points as in (B): but facing inwards.

The Coverers in front and rear of the named Company proceed as in (A) and (B): the former changing flanks on the *Caution*.

[The centre *aide* will give a point at arm's length from the Supernumerary Serjeant of the named Company.]

In Deployments from *Double Column*, the centre Serjeant and the Coverers of the 2 centre Companies give the base points. If the Column is formed of Subdivisions, the outward flank, only, of each Company will be marked by its Coverer.

N.B.—In all the above formations, the Serjeants marking the base of formation will fall into their places in Line on the Major's word *STEADY* at the completion of the Movement: the Coverers giving the intermediate points, when the 2nd Company from their own gets *Eyes front*.

26. A Line changing Front by the intermediate formation of Open Column. (p. 149.)

On the Caution—† The Coverer of the Company of formation will change flank (if necessary) with his Captain.

During the formation of the Column, Coverers proceed as in No. 12: when the Column is wheeled into Line, as in No. 20.

† When the change of front is on a central Company, and the new Line is to be formed obliquely

F. E. III.,
P. 169.

to the old :—The Coverer of the named Company will give the new direction, marking the covering and distance for the Company which will form next in front of his own in the Column ; and being dressed, by a mounted Officer, on the new alignment.

SEC. VI.—ECHELLON MOVEMENTS.

27. A Battalion wheeling forward into Echelon.
(p. 155.)

(A) From the Halt, on fixed pivots.
On the Caution—If the wheel is to be to the Left, Coverers change flanks.

F. E. III.,
p. 188.

On the word WHEEL—Each Coverer places himself in front of the 8th file from the named flank of his Company, takes the ordered number of paces to the front, and stands fast till his Captain gives *Eyes front*. He then falls in on the reverse flank of his front rank, his proper place in Echelon.

(B) On Moveable pivots.

On the word FORWARD—If the Echelon is formed of Companies, each Coverer takes post on the reverse flank of his Company : if of Subdivisions (or Sections), remains in his place.

28. Re-forming Line.
(p. 158.)

(A) Line parallel to the original Line.
(From the Halt.)

F. E. III.,
p. 191.

On the Caution—The Coverers, if not already on the right of their Companies, change to that flank, and remain there till replaced by their Captains.

[If Line is re-formed *on the March* from an Echelon formed to the *Left* :—Each Coverer, at the word *FORWARD*, makes way for his Captain (who will in that case change his flank) to move up on the right of his Company.]

(B) Line oblique to the original Line.

The Coverer of each Company that is wheeled backward or forward preparatory to the formation of the new Line, proceeds as directed in No. 21 (a), or No. 27.

The leading Company (or the remaining Companies) having been wheeled as may be necessary†—

The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the Company of formation will give the base points on its flanks: the Coverer taking the flank furthest from the Captain, and both facing towards the point of *appui*. [The inner *aide* will give a base point at arm's length from the Supernumerary Serjeant.]

On the 2nd word MARCH—The remaining Coverers march off on the outward flanks of their respective Companies, running out (as usual) to take up their covering in the line of Coverers.

† The Company of formation will be wheeled up from the original alignment at double the angle that the remainder are wheeled: or, the remainder will be wheeled to half the angle that the Company of formation is wheeled.

29. A Battalion in Line changing Front by Echelon.
(p. 161.)

Suppose the Movement performed on *moveable pivots from the Halt* ;—

F. E. III.,
p. 193.

(A) On a Flank Company: the remainder thrown *forward*.

On their Captain's word "Halt"—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the Company of formation give the base points: the former on its outward, the latter on its inward, flank: both facing to the point of *appui*.

Each of the remaining Coverers, on the word **FORWARD**, places himself on the outer flank of his Company: running out, as usual, when within 20 paces of the new alignment, to take up his covering in the line of points.

(B) On a Flank Company: the remainder thrown *back*.

On their Captain's word "Halt"—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the Company of formation give the base points, as in (A).

Each of the other Coverers will proceed as in (A) : but, in giving his point, will leave room for his Company to pass clear of him ; and when it has passed, will take a pace to his present front (without losing his covering), so as not to interfere with the pivot flank of the next Company.

(C) On a central Company ; or the centre of the Battalion.

If the change of front is on the centre of a Company :—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of that Company will (at their Captain's word *Halt*) give the base points : the former on the wheeling-forward flank ; the latter on the flank that wheels back. [The centre *aide* gives his point at arm's length from the Coverer.]

If the change of front is on the centre of the Battalion :—The Coverer of each of the 2 centre Companies will (on the left-centre Captain's word *Halt*) give a point on the outward flank of his Company : facing inwards. [The centre Serjeant will move out to give a centre base point ; the centre *aide* giving his base point at arm's length from him.]

The Coverers of the Companies that are faced about proceed as in (B) : the remainder, as in (A).

[When either of the above Movements is performed from the Halt, *not* 'on moveable pivots' :—The Coverer of the named Company (unless it is to wheel the *quarter circle*, in which case he will run out, on the *Caution*, to mark where its wheeling flank will rest) will be directed to take his paces, and will be halted, by the Battalion Commander from the point of *appui* ; and that Company will then be wheeled into the required direction by word of its Captain. Each of the remaining Coverers, on the word *WHEEL*, will take the ordered number of paces from the 8th file of his Company, in the usual way.]

30. Advancing
and Retiring
in Direct
Echelon.
(p. 165.)

Advancing.

F. E. III.,
p. 200.

On the Caution—If the advance is from the Right, each Coverer changes his flank; but does not move up on the left of his Company till it has moved out clear of the rest of the Line. If the advance is from the Left, Coverers do *not* change with their Captains; but each (except the Coverer of the right-flank Company) takes a pace to his rear, to let the Captain of the Company on his right move up on its left: placing himself on the right of the front rank of his Company when it moves out of the Line.

Retiring.

On the Caution—If the retreat commences from the Right, each Coverer moves to the left of the *rear* rank of his Company.

31. Re-form-
ing Line.
(p. 167.)

(A) Line parallel to the original Line.

F. E. III.,
p. 201.

On the Caution—The Coverer and Supernumerary Serjeant of the named Company give the base points; facing to the point of *appui*.

[If the formation is on a central Company, the centre *aide* will be placed in front of that flank of the Company of formation which was the pivot in Echelon.]

The remainder run out, as usual, to mark where the outward flanks of their Companies will rest in Line.

(B) Line at right angles to the original Line.

During the wheel—Coverers change flank: When Line is formed, proceed as in (A).

(C) Line oblique to the original Line.

The directing (outer) flank of the leading Company will be taken as the first point in the intended Line. The new alignment will then be determined by the Coverer of the leading Company moving back, and covering in the

direction required; at wheeling distance from the pivot flank of his Company.

On the Caution—The other Coverers run back to mark the point on which the pivot flank of the Company next in rear of their own will rest; taking wheeling distance, in succession, from base points. Having taken their distance and covering, they will face in the same direction as the leading Company.

[When the oblique Echelon that will then be formed, is wheeled back into Line; each Coverer proceeds as in No. 28 (A).]

SEC. VII.—SQUARES.

32. Square from Open or Quarter-distance Column, on any named Company.
(p. 170.)

(1) *Square on the leading Company.*

The Coverer of the leading Company will run to the rear of No. 2 on the word *Q. MARCH*, or on his Captain's word *Halt: dress*, according as the Column is halted or on the march. The Coverers of the 2 rear Companies run into Square the moment the 3rd Company from the rear brings Sections outwards.

(2) *Square on the rear Company.*

The Coverers of the rear and rear-but-one Companies will run round, and place themselves close to the proper front rank of the latter, at the word *Q. MARCH* or when the Captain of the rear Company gives *Halt: dress*, according as the Column is halted or retiring. The Coverers of Nos. 1 and 2 will run into Square as No. 3 turns to the front preparatory to bringing Sections outwards.

(3) *Square on the Centre.*

The Coverers of side-face Companies get into Square when the Companies in their present

F. E. III.,
p. 173.

front bring Sections outwards: the remaining Coverers, as in ⁽¹⁾ and ⁽²⁾.

33. Square from Line on any named Company.
(p. 177.)

Coverers lead the front rank of their Companies when in Fours.

F. E. III.,
p. 180.

The Coverer of No. 1 should run on into Square before No. 2 brings Sections outwards.

34. Formation of a Two-deep Square from Line.
(p. 183.)

On the word SQUARE—The Coverers of the 2 flank Companies place themselves in front of their leading files. The Coverers of the right- and left-centre Companies (the former having first changed his flank) step back into Square. Each of the remaining right-wing Coverers, when his Captain changes his flank, places himself on the proper right of the proper rear rank of his Company. The remaining left-wing Coverers change flanks, and place themselves on the proper left of the proper rear rank of their respective Companies.

F. E. III.,
p. 184.

On the word MARCH—The Coverers of the Companies in echelon march off on their outward flanks, till they run on to take up their distance in the Square.

35. Re-forming Line.
(p. 185.)

On the word LINE—The Coverers of the 2 flank Companies place themselves in front of their leading files. The Coverers of the 2 centre Companies move out of Square, and mark the outward flanks of those Companies.

F. E. III.,
p. 185.

On the word MARCH—The Coverer of each of the 2 flank Companies leads across to where the inner flank of his Company will rest in Line; and then changes direction parallel to the alignment. The Coverers of side-face Companies move up on their outward flanks: running out, as usual, to take up their covering in the line of Coverers.

APPENDIX I.

WORDS OF COMMAND—For

<p>(1) The <i>Manual</i> and <i>Platoon</i>, &c.</p> <p>(2) The Bayonet Exercise.</p> <p>(3) Sending out an Advanced and</p>	<p>Rear Guard on a Road.</p> <p>(4) Relieving Guard</p> <p>(5) A Funeral Party.</p>
--	---

(a) THE MANUAL EXERCISE.

The Company (or Line) standing at open order, with bayonets unfixed and Arms shouldered, will receive the following caution and commands:—

Manual Exercise in Slow Time.

1. *Secure Arms* (3)*—*Shoulder Arms* (3).
2. *Order Arms* (3)—*Fix Bayonets* † (4)—*Shoulder Arms* (3).
3. *Present Arms* (3)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
4. *Port Arms* (2)—‡ *Charge Bayonets* (1)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
5. *Advance Arms* (3)—*Order Arms* (3).
6. *Advance Arms* (3)—*Shoulder Arms* (3).
7. *Support Arms* (3)—*Stand at Ease* (1)—*Attention* (1).
8. *Carry Arms* (3).
9. *Slope Arms* (1)—*Stand at Ease* (1)—*Attention* (1).
10. *Carry Arms* (2).

For Riflemen.

1. *Secure Arms* (2)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
2. *Order Arms* (2)—*Fix Swords* † (3)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
3. *Present Arms* (3)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
4. *Port Arms* (2)—‡ *Charge Swords* (1)—*Shoulder Arms* (2).
5. *Slope Arms* (3)—*Stand at Ease* (1)—*Attention* (1).
6. *Carry Arms* (3).

Rear rank take Close order.—March.

* The figures in brackets shew the number of motions.

† Longer pause.

‡ Rear rank stands fast.

(b) THE PLATOON EXERCISE.

Platoon Exercise in Slow time. { Rear rank takes a pace of 9 inches to the front.

Prepare to Load (2).

Load (5).

Rod (2).

Home (4).

Return (2).

Cap (6).

* *Fire a Volley.* At — yards :

Ready (1).

Present (5).

In Quick time: Load. . . . { After returning rods, the men make a pause of slow time : then come to the capping position, and cap.

Shoulder Arms { The rear rank, when carrying away the hand, takes a pace of 9 inches to the rear.

(c) FIRINGS.

Company [*Wing*, or *Battalion*] : { Rear rank takes a pace of 9 inches to the front.

* *Fire a Volley.*

At — yards : *Ready.*
Present.

{ After firing, the men make a pause ; come down to the capping position ; put down the flap ; and seize the rifle with the right hand close in front of the left. After another pause, they come to the *Prepare to load* position : and go on with their loading in Quick time.

Cease Firing { The men complete their loading, and cap. See (F) page 64.

Shoulder Arms.

File-firing from the right [*left*, or both *flanks*] of *Companies.* { Rear rank takes a pace of 9 inches to the front.

* When it is not intended to re-load, the command will be *Fire a Volley, and shoulder.* At — yards : *Ready.*—*Present* : and the men, after firing, will make a pause ; come down to the capping position ; shut down the flap ; and bring back the right hand to the small of the butt, at the same time closing the heels. After another pause, they will come to the 'shoulder'.

<i>Commence</i>	{ The files fire in succession (front- and rear-rank men alternately) from the named flank, for the 1st round: each file then loads and fires independently.
<i>Cease Firing</i>	{ Each file, as it completes its loading, will shoulder; those that are at the 'ready' first half-cocking their rifles.

N.B.—In *Volley* firing, the men will, on the word '*Ready*', adjust their sights; and in coming to the capping position after firing or loading, or to the shoulder, will take the time from the right. In *File* firing, each man, before full cocking his rifle, will adjust his sight. In all cases, the front rank, after giving their fire, must remain perfectly steady; so as not to derange the aim of the rear rank.

(d) EXERCISE TO RECEIVE CAVALRY.

(Square having been formed)—

<i>Prepare for Cavalry</i> . . .	{ 2nd and 4th ranks take a pace of 9 inches to the front.
<i>Ready</i>	{ The 2 front ranks sink down on the right knee as a front and rear rank kneeling; and place the butts of the rifles on the ground, against the inside of that knee—locks uppermost and muzzles slanting upwards: the left hand grasps the rifle just above the lowest band, the right holds the small of the butt; the left arm rests on the thigh, 6 inches in rear of the left knee. The 3rd and 4th ranks make ready as a front and rear rank standing: muzzles of the rifles inclined upwards.
<i>File-firing from the right</i> [left, or both flanks] of the — <i>Face(s).—Commence.</i>	{ Standing ranks commence <i>File-firing</i> , as directed in (c).
<i>Cease Firing</i>	{ Each file completes its loading, and shoulders, as directed in (c).
<i>Kneeling ranks: Fire a Volley.</i>	

<i>At — yards: Ready . . .</i>	{ Kneeling ranks come to the capping position, bringing the weight of the body on the right heel; adjust the sights; full cock; and fix the eye steadfastly on an object in front.
<i>Present</i>	{ After firing, the rifles are again brought down to receive Cavalry.
<i>Load</i>	{ The kneeling ranks spring to Attention at the half-face; and bring the rifle to an horizontal position at the right side, seizing it with the right hand close in front of the left: then come to the <i>Prepare to load</i> position as standing ranks, and go on with the loading in Quick time.

N.B.—When the sides of the Square are less than four deep, the front rank, only, will kneel.

(e) TO FIRE A FEU-DE-JOIE.

The Line being drawn up at Open order, Arms shouldered, and bayonets fixed:—

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>With blank cartridge:</i>
<i>Load.</i> | { Quick time.—Muzzles of the rifles to slant upwards when capping. |
| 2, 3, 4. <i>Ready.—Present.</i>
3 times. | { The right-hand front-rank man commences the fire, which will run quickly down the front and up the rear. The whole then (taking the time from the right) come to the capping, and thence to the loading, position: and when loaded and capped, remain waiting for the next word. After the 3rd fire, the whole remain steady at the capping position. |

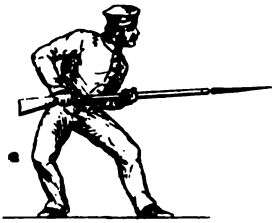
5. *Shoulder Arms.—Present Arms.*

6. *Shoulder Arms.—Order Arms.*

(Three Cheers.)

BAYONET EXERCISE.

I.



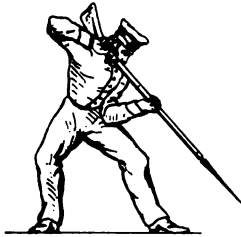
"Guard."

II.

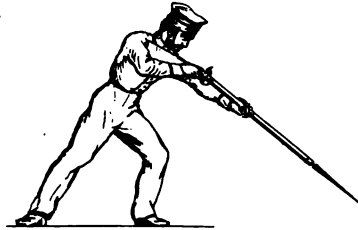


"Point."

III.

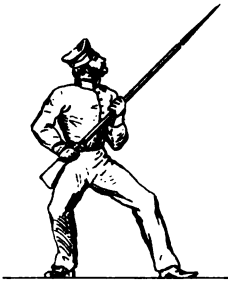


"Low"



"Point."

IV.

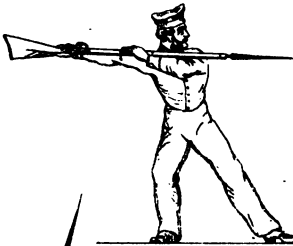


"High"

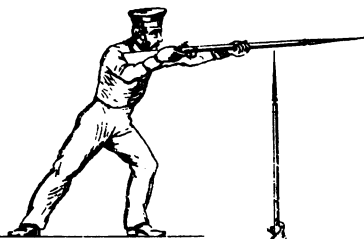


"Point."

V.



"Shorten Arms"



"Point."

VI.



"Second Point"



"Point."

(2.) BAYONET EXERCISE.

(Review Exercise.)

The Company (or Battalion) being in Line, with ranks closed and shouldered Arms:—

<i>Prepare for Bayonet Exercise</i>	{	The right files of the front rank stand fast: the remainder of both ranks go to the right-about.
<i>Quick March</i>	{	The files which have faced about move straight to the rear; the front-rank left files 4 paces, the rear-rank right files 7 paces, the rear-rank left files 11 paces: each man halting and fronting at his proper distance, and the ranks dressing by the right.

Review Exercise.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Guard.</i> | 2. <i>Point.</i> |
| 3. <i>Low—Point.</i> | 4. <i>High—Point.</i> |
| 5. <i>Shorten Arms — Point.</i> | |
| 6. <i>Second Point — Point.</i> | |
| 7. <i>Guard.</i> | |
| 8. <i>Right—Point.</i> | 9. <i>Left—Point.</i> |
| 10. <i>Low—Point.</i> | 11. <i>High—Point.</i> |
| 12. <i>Right—Point.</i> | 13. <i>Low—Point.</i> |
| 14. <i>Guard.</i> | |

Shoulder Arms. Order Arms. Stand at Ease.

[The above practice will then be performed to the rear: the words *Attention—Shoulder Arms—Guard—About* being first given.]

The Exercise being finished, the men will be brought to their proper front by the word *About*; and will then receive the commands

Shoulder Arms.

Form Line: Quick March.

Order Arms—Stand at Ease.

See Bayonet Ex., p. 19.

(3.) TO SEND OUT AN ADVANCED AND REAR GUARD ON A ROAD.

Suppose a halted Column, Right in front: and that the Guard is to consist of one Company:—

[The *Lieutenant* will take command of the front Section: the *Ensign*, of the next (or Support): the *Captain*, of the 2 rear Sections (or Reserve).]

(a) AN ADVANCED GUARD.

The Captain of the leading Company (if no other Company's call is sounded) will give—

Right Section to the front. Remaining Sections: on the move, Right wheel. Q. March. (When square)—Forward.

The 3 rear Sections having, in succession, got *Left wheel* from their respective leaders; the Captain will give *Column: halt:* and will then proceed to give the following commands:—

1. † *Nos. 1 and 2 files from the right of No. 1 Section, with a Corporal: advanced Party.—Advance.*
(Interval of 60 paces.)
2. † *Nos. 3 and 4 files: Right flanking Party.* } *Advance.*
‡ *Nos. 5 and 6 files: Left flanking Party.* }
(Interval of 60 paces.)
3. *Remainder of 1st Section.—Advance.*
(Interval of 60 paces.)
4. *Right file of No. 2 Section: connecting file.—Advance.*
(Interval of 60 paces.)
5. *Remainder of No. 2 Section: Support.—Advance.*
(Interval of 120 paces.)
6. *Right file of No. 3 Section: connecting file.—Advance.*
(Interval of 120 paces.)
7. *Stand fast the Left file of No. 4 Section. Nos. 3 and 4 Sections, Reserve:—Advance.*

† A weak Company may send on only one file and a Corporal in front, and one file on each flank.

N.B.—If a Column is Left in front, the leading Company will form Column of Sections Left in front; and the formation of the Advanced Guard will commence from the left of the leading Section.

(b) A REAR GUARD.

A Rear Guard is formed in precisely the same manner as an Advanced Guard, only facing to the rear: it will therefore, when moving, be rear rank in front; and when halted and fronted, will be facing to the proper rear.

The Company of which the Guard is to consist having been countermarched, the different parties will be marched off as in (a): if the main body is right in front the Rear Guard will be left in front, and *vice versa*.

If no enemy is near, and the Column is *on the March*—The Guard may be formed by the several parties—instead of moving off, after countermarching, to their proper distances—facing about in succession, and marching off in rear of the Column as it gains the proper distance from each.

Note.—An Advanced or Rear Guard *on a plain*, is simply a line of Skirmishers with Supports, and—if far distant from the main body—with a Reserve. When the leading files of an Advanced Guard on a road come out on a plain, they will halt and lie down: the flanking files moving up and lying down with them at their usual distances of 100 yards. The remainder of the leading Section, as it comes up, will extend from its centre: the 2nd Section will also extend from its centre and reinforce the leading Section. The Skirmishers thus formed will advance, correcting their distances from the centre on the march: the reserve will form Subdivision, and act as a Support to the Skirmishers.

An Advanced Guard, thus extended, may resume its original formation by the leading files moving on, and the remainder halting till they have gained their proper distances and then following on in succession; the remainder of the 1st and 2nd Sections closing on their centres.

See Field Ex., pp. 243—245.

(4.) RELIEVING GUARD.

[The old Guard will be drawn up at Open order on its parade: The new Guard will form line at 20 or 30 paces in front of the old Guard, and will then advance in Slow time.]

Word given by Commander
of new Guard.

Word given by Commander
of old Guard.

(When 10 or 15 paces from old Guard)—

1. *New Guard: Halt, dress.
Rear rank take Open order:
—March.*
2. *New Guard: Present Arms.*
3. *New Guard: Shoulder Arms.*
4. *New Guard: Order Arms.
Stand at Ease.†*

1. *Old Guard: Present Arms.*
2. *Old Guard; Shoulder Arms.**
3. *Old Guard: Order Arms.
Stand at Ease.*

The reliefs having returned; and all the men of the old Guard having fallen in:—

5. *New Guard: Attention.
Shoulder Arms.*
6. *New Guard: Present Arms.*
7. *New Guard: Shoulder Arms.*

4. *Old Guard: Attention.
Shoulder Arms.*
5. *Old Guard: Rear rank
take Close order. March.*
6. *Old Guard: Fours right.
Slow March.*
- (When clear of its ground)—
7. *Old Guard: Quick.*

The Commander of the new Guard then gives—
Guard: Fours right. Left wheel—Slow March.

When the leading files reach the left of the ground on which the old Guard was formed—

Left wheel.

When on the old Guard's ground—

Halt, front: dress.

To the right Face.—Lodge Arms.

[If necessary, the new Guard may move up to the old Guard in fours (or files) in Slow time: and be halted and fronted either opposite to it, or on its left (in the same line) at 4 or 6 paces' interval.]

See Field Ex., p. 320.

* And hands the duplicate of his Guard report to the Commander of the new Guard.

† And reads the orders of the Guard to his men. The Guard will then be told off, and the first relief sent out.

(5.) FUNERAL PARTIES.

Large Funeral parties will march in Column of Companies, Subdivisions or Sections, Left in front: small parties will march in File. The remainder of the procession will, in both cases, be formed as follows:—

Pall-bearers, of equal rank with Deceased.	THE CORPSE. Chief Mourners.	Pall-bearers, of equal rank with Deceased.
---	--------------------------------	---

Officers (or N. C. officers) two and two, according to rank: juniors in front.

[The Escort is drawn up two-deep, with opened ranks and unfixed bayonets; facing the place where the Corpse is lodged. *Small parties* will be formed with the files extended at one side-pace from each other.]

The Officer in command will give the following words:—

(1) When the Corpse is brought out:—

PRESENT ARMS.

*REVERSE ARMS.**

REAR RANK(S) TAKE CLOSE ORDER.—MARCH.

BY COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS or SECTIONS): LEFT WHEEL [or ON THE RIGHT BACKWARDS WHEEL].—Q. MARCH.

HALT: DRESS.

REAR RANK TAKE OPEN ORDER.—MARCH.

FROM THE RIGHT: ONE SIDE-PADE—EXTEND.

[To a small party formed in Files, after *REVERSE ARMS*, the word *TO THE LEFT FACE* will be given instead of the above commands: both ranks countermarching inwards, if necessary.]

SLOW MARCH.

(2) When the head of the procession arrives near the spot where it is to meet the Clergyman:—

COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS or SECTIONS): TO THE LEFT TURN. RIGHT WHEEL.

HALT.—RANKS: INWARDS FACE.

FRONT RANK: FOUR PACES STEP-BACK.—MARCH.

[If the Party is small and formed in Files, the ranks will incline outwards from each other and will then get *HALT. INWARDS FACE.*]

* Officers' swords are reversed under the right arm: the point downwards, the hilt grasped with the right hand.

APPENDIX I.

*REST UPON YOUR ARMS REVERSED.
STAND AT EASE.*

(3) When the Corps has passed through:—

*ATTENTION.
REVERSE ARMS.
RANKS: RIGHT AND LEFT FACE.—SLOW MARCH.*

[As the men move off, the front rank will incline to the rear rank till at 2 paces' distance from it.]

(4) When opposite the grave:—

*HALT: FRONT.
REST UPON YOUR ARMS REVERSED.
STAND AT EASE.*

(5) The Funeral Service being concluded:—

*ATTENTION.
PRESENT ARMS.—SHOULDER ARMS.
WITH BLANK CARTRIDGE: LOAD.
FIRE THREE VOLLEYS IN THE AIR.
READY: PRESENT.—LOAD.
DITTO.
DITTO.
ORDER ARMS.—FIX BAYONETS.
SHOULDER ARMS.
REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE ORDER.—MARCH.*

The Escort will then be marched back to Camp (or Barracks) in Fours, Subdivisions, or Sections, Right in front; in quick time.

See Field Ex., p. 326.

QUICK STEP.

280

The musical score is written for piano in 2/4 time, featuring a treble and bass staff. The key signature has two flats (B-flat and E-flat). The melody in the treble staff consists of eighth and sixteenth notes, often beamed together. The bass staff provides a harmonic accompaniment with chords and single notes. The piece concludes with a double bar line and a final chord in the bass staff.

"Comp^d & Battⁿ Drill."

Wm. C. Brooks



1

WEIGHT AND DIMENSIONS OF ARMS, AMMUNITION, ETC.—1860.

DESCRIPTION.	MUSKET.				BAYONET or SWORD.		BARREL.				AMMUNITION.									
	WEIGHT.		LENGTH.		Length beyond Muzzle.	Weight.	Weight of Scabbard.	DIMENSIONS, &c.				GROOVES.		PLUG BULLET.						
	With Bayonet (or Sword).	Without Bayonet (or Sword).	With Bayonet (or Sword).	Without Bayonet (or Sword).				Weight.	Length.	Diameter of Bore.	Windage.	Number.	Width.	Depth.	Description.	Degree of Spinality.	Weight.	Diameter.	Length.	Charge of Powder.
Long Enfield (Pattern 1853)	10 04	9 34	6 01	4 7 1/2	1 5 "	13 "	4 "	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	in.	dr.	lb. oz. dr.	5 8 4
Short Enfield (Pattern 1856)	10 34	8 7 1/2	5 11 1/2	4 04	1 11	1 12	7 1/2	ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto	Uniform	ditto	ditto	ditto	do.	do.	5 8 4
Royal Artillery (Pattern 1853)	8 34	6 7 1/2	5 3	3 4 1/2	1 10 1/2	1 12	13 1/2	"	ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto	ditto	2	do.	5 6 6
Royal Engineers (Pattern 1855)	9 9	8 "	5 11 1/2	3 11 1/2	2 "	1 9	9	"	2 7 1/2	2 7 1/2	2 7 1/2	2 7 1/2	Ellipt.	Increasing	do.	do.	do.	2 1/2	do.	5 8 4

APPENDIX III.

THE following Table gives the left-hand men of Sections in *Right* and *Left* Companies. (See p. 13.)

Each multiple of 4 (from which the calculations for the 3 next lowest numbers will easily be made) is distinguished by larger type.

In a <i>Right</i> Com- pany consisting of FILES.	Left-hand men of Sections.				In a <i>Left</i> Com- pany consisting of FILES.	Left-hand men of Sections.			
	I.	II.	III.	IV.		I.	II.	III.	IV.
21 .	6 .	11 .	16 .	21	21 .	5 .	10 .	15 .	21
22 .	6 .	11 .	16 .	22	22 .	6 .	11 .	16 .	22
23 .	6 .	12 .	17 .	23	23 .	6 .	11 .	17 .	23
24 .	6 .	12 .	18 .	24	24 .	6 .	12 .	18 .	24
25 .	7 .	13 .	19 .	25	25 .	6 .	12 .	18 .	25
26 .	7 .	13 .	19 .	26	26 .	7 .	13 .	19 .	26
27 .	7 .	14 .	20 .	27	27 .	7 .	13 .	20 .	27
28 .	7 .	14 .	21 .	28	28 .	7 .	14 .	21 .	28
29 .	8 .	15 .	22 .	29	29 .	7 .	14 .	21 .	29
30 .	8 .	15 .	22 .	30	30 .	8 .	15 .	22 .	30
31 .	8 .	16 .	23 .	31	31 .	8 .	15 .	23 .	31
32 .	8 .	16 .	24 .	32	32 .	8 .	16 .	24 .	32
33 .	9 .	17 .	25 .	33	33 .	8 .	16 .	24 .	33
34 .	9 .	17 .	25 .	34	34 .	9 .	17 .	25 .	34
35 .	9 .	18 .	26 .	35	35 .	9 .	17 .	26 .	35
36 .	9 .	18 .	27 .	36	36 .	9 .	18 .	27 .	36
37 .	10 .	19 .	28 .	37	37 .	9 .	18 .	27 .	37
38 .	10 .	19 .	28 .	38	38 .	10 .	19 .	28 .	38
39 .	10 .	20 .	29 .	39	39 .	10 .	19 .	29 .	39
40 .	10 .	20 .	30 .	40	40 .	10 .	20 .	30 .	40
41 .	11 .	21 .	31 .	41	41 .	10 .	20 .	30 .	41
42 .	11 .	21 .	31 .	42	42 .	11 .	21 .	31 .	42
43 .	11 .	22 .	32 .	43	43 .	11 .	21 .	32 .	43
44 .	11 .	22 .	33 .	44	44 .	11 .	22 .	33 .	44
45 .	12 .	23 .	34 .	45	45 .	11 .	22 .	33 .	45
46 .	12 .	23 .	34 .	46	46 .	12 .	23 .	34 .	46
47 .	12 .	24 .	35 .	47	47 .	12 .	23 .	35 .	47
48 .	12 .	24 .	36 .	48	48 .	12 .	24 .	36 .	48

INDEX.

	PAGE
<i>Adjutant—</i>	
Post of the	60, 61
<i>Advanced Guard—</i>	
Posting of Officers with an	226
Words of command for sending out an	ib.
<i>Aides, Battalion</i>	65, 66
<i>Alignment—</i>	
Moving by Fours into, an	117
Taken up previously to Line formations	65
<i>Ammunition</i>	231
<i>Appui, Point of—</i>	
Explanation of	66
Serjeants face towards, in giving points for Lines	198
When Companies are dressed from	63
<i>Arms—</i>	
When carried, sloped, &c.	6
When recovered and when shouldered, by Coverers giving points	197
<i>Attention—</i>	
Position of the Soldier at	7
Officers' swords, how carried at	3
<i>Baggage Square</i>	183
<i>Base of Formation—</i>	
Explanation of term	65
<i>Base Points—</i>	
To be given on the <i>Caution</i> to form Line	65
<i>Battalion, The—</i>	
Advancing in Line	70
Advancing by Wings	74
At Open order	68
Changing position by Open Column	149
Formation of, on parade	59
Forming Column from Line	85—109
Forming Line from Column	128—142
Forming Square 4-deep	170—173
Forming Square 2-deep	183
Movements of, in Line	68—80
Movements of, in Column	110—127
Passing Obstacles	77—80, 84

	PAGE
<i>Bayonet—</i>	
Exercise	225
To be fixed in Field movements and firings	59
Weight and length of	231
<i>Blank file</i>	7
<i>Breaking off Files—</i>	
From a flank of a Company in Column	52
<i>Brigade Evolutions—</i>	
Battalion to be drilled with reference to	59
<i>Caution—</i>	
To be given before each Movement in Company Drill	8
<i>Cavalry—</i>	
A Square resisting	55, 57, 174
<i>Charge in Line</i>	70
<i>Close order—</i>	
A Battalion in Line taking	69
Distance of ranks at	8
How taken on the March	19
<i>Closing by the Side-step—</i>	
A single Company at Drill	43
A Battalion	63
<i>Colour Party—</i>	
Formation of	67
Posting of	61, 62
<i>Column—</i>	
Contiguous	82
Covering of Officers in	32, 84
Flank to which Companies cover and dress in	82
Formations of from Line	85—109
" Line from	128—142
Movements in	110—127
Posting of Officers, &c. in	8, 61
Of Route	61
"Pivot" and "reverse" flank, in	2
When said to be <i>Right</i> , and when <i>Left, in front</i>	ib.
Close, of Sections	55
<i>Column at Close and Quarter distance—</i>	
Deployments from	143—148
Distance between Companies in	82
Formation of Square from	173, 182
<i>Columns, Double—</i>	
All advances from the Centre, made in	83
Battalion in Line advancing in	93
" retiring from both flanks in rear of the	
centre, in	100

Columns, Double—

Formation of from Line	100
„ Line from	138—142
„ Square from	173
Proper Left, the directing flank in	82

Column, Open—

Changes of position of Lines, by	149
Changing the leading flank of an	121, 123
Changing direction, an	117
Closing an	110
Distance between Companies, in	82
Extent of Battalion, in	ib.
Forming Line from	128
„ Square from	170
Increasing and diminishing front of an	47—51, 83
Line advancing from a flank, in	90
„ retiring from a flank, in	97
Taking ground to a flank, and forming Square on the centre	172

Company—

A Single, to be drilled as if in Battalion	8
Formation of, on parade	7
Forming, from File or Fours	39—41
„ to either flank from Open Column of Subdivisions or Sections	33, 37
Gaining ground to a flank by Echelon of Sections	35
How to tell off and prove, a	12
Inspection of a, on its private parade	11
„ in Battalion	60
Square	55, 180
To dismiss a	58

Companies—

How told off in a Battalion in Line	68
„ in Column	59
Passing one another	177
Right and Left, meaning of	60

Correction of Coverers and pivots—

By whom, and whence, made	66
-------------------------------------	----

Countermarching—

By Files	46
By Ranks	45
Of a Column, by Subdivisions round the centre	119
Of a Company in Line, on which a Column is to be formed facing to the Rear	107
When it does, and does not, change the pivot flank of a Column	84

Covering—

Of Officers in Column	32, 84
„ in Echelon	127, 157

	PAGE
<i>Covering-serjeants—</i>	
By whom dressed when giving points in Battalion	67
Duties of, in Battalion	199—220
How they face in giving points	198
Posting of	8, 60
Take distance for their <i>whole</i> Company	198
When they 'recover' and when 'shoulder,' in giving points	197
When they take their Captains' place	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Defile—</i>	
Passage of, by breaking off Files	52, 78
<i>Degrees of March</i>	1
<i>Deployments</i>	143—148
<i>Diagonal March—</i>	
Captains do not change flanks, in the	18
Who may have to lead the Company, in the	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Diminishing—</i>	
The front of a Column	47, 83
<i>Direction, Columns changing</i>	25, 117
<i>Directing Serjeant</i>	70
<i>Distance—</i>	
Closing, to correct	63
For any number of Files, how to calculate	1
<i>Double Columns—(See Columns.)</i>	
<i>Double Files (or Fours) from the centre—</i>	
May be used to pass Obstacles	79, 84
Posting of Officers and Colours, in	79
<i>Dressing—</i>	
A Battalion in Line	72
Companies when wheeled into Line	63
" when coming up successively into Line	<i>ib.</i>
Intermediate points to be kept clear in	66
Look of the Soldier, in	<i>ib.</i>
Not done in Column	63
A Single Company	10
<i>Drill—</i>	
Of a Company, conducted with reference to the Battalion	8
Of a Battalion, conducted with reference to Brigade	59
<i>Ease, standing at—</i>	
Officers' swords, in	3, 16

	PAGE
<i>Echelon—</i>	
Changes of front, by	161—164
Covering of Officers, in	36, 157
Direct	165
Formations and Movements in	155—169
March of Sections, in	35
Method of forming Direct	153
" Oblique	ib.
Oblique	155—164
Posting of Covering-serjeants in	62
" of Officers and Colours in	ib.
Re-forming Line from Direct	167
" from Oblique	158
<i>Enfield Musket—</i>	
Weight, length, &c. of	231
<i>Exercise—</i>	
Manual and Platoon	221, 222
<i>Feu-de-Joie</i>	224
<i>Field Officers—</i>	
Posting of	60, 61
<i>File—</i>	
Blank and Odd	7, 13
Space in the ranks, allowed for a	7
<i>Files --</i>	
How to calculate paces for	1
Method of breaking off	52
<i>File Firing</i>	65, 223
<i>File Marching—</i>	
Formation of Company, Subdivisions, or Sections, from	39—41
Posting of Officers and Covering-serjeant in	9
<i>Firing—</i>	
By Companies	64, 222
By Wings	74, 222
File	65, 223
From whence begins, in formations	65
Volley	64, 222
When the front rank kneels in	65, 224
Words of command for	222
<i>Flank—</i>	
A Column, taking ground to a	125
“Inner” and “Outer”	2
“Pivot” and “Reverse”	ib.
<i>Flanks—</i>	
How to change	10
<i>Foot—on which men should turn</i>	39

	PAGE
<i>Formations—</i>	
Echelon	155—169
Of Column from Line	85—109
„ from Square	175
Of Line from Column	128—142
Of Squares from Column	170—174
„ from Line	177
<i>Formation—</i>	
Base, and Points, of	65
<i>Forming Company—</i>	
From File or Fours	39—41
From Subdivisions or Sections	33, 37
<i>“Forward”—</i>	
Not given to men after turning about	17
<i>Fours—</i>	
Formation of, from the Halt	39
„ on the March	41
„ of Company from	39
„ of Two-deep from	42
Passing Obstacles, by the Companies forming	77, 80
Posting of Officers and Coverer, in	9
Rule to be observed when a Company moves to a flank, in	109
<i>Front—</i>	
How Officers and men	48
<i>Funeral Parties—</i>	
Words of command for	229
<i>General Rules</i>	6
<i>Guard, Relieving</i>	228
<i>Horses—</i>	
Of mounted Officers	67
<i>Increasing—</i>	
The front of a Column	49, 83
<i>Inner flank</i>	2
<i>Inspection or Review</i>	187—196
<i>Inspection—</i>	
Of a Company on its private parade	11, 12
„ in Column	60
<i>Kneeling Ranks—</i>	
In Square	56, 174, 224
<i>Line—</i>	
A relieving	80

	PAGE
<i>Line—</i>	
An Officer to be always posted on the left of the	60
Changing front by Echelon	161
" by Open Column	149
Charging in	70
Deployments into	143—152
Distance of Supernumerary rank in	8
Formation of from Column	128—142
" of Column, from	85—109
" of Echelon, from	153
" of Square, from	177
How Captains are aligned while retiring in	71
Posting of Officers, Coverers, and Colours in	8, 60
<i>Manual Exercise</i>	221
<i>March—</i>	
Degrees of	1
Diagonal	18
<i>Marching—</i>	
At Ease	3
Past a Reviewing Officer	3, 188
<i>Marking Time—</i>	
Word of command for	1
<i>Moveable Pivots.</i> (See <i>Pivots</i> .)	
<i>Mounted Officers.</i> (See <i>Field Officers</i> .)	
<i>Obstacles—</i>	
How to pass	77, 80, 84
<i>Odd file</i>	13
<i>Officers—</i>	
Changing flanks	10
Posting of	8, 60
Saluting in Line	187
" in marching past in Column	189
Swords of, how carried, &c.	2
<i>" On the Move"—</i>	
When given	6, 24
<i>Order, Close—</i>	
Distance of ranks at	8
How taken from the Halt	15
" on the March	19
<i>Order, Inverted</i>	135, 147
<i>Order, Open—</i>	
Distance of ranks at	8
How taken from the Halt	15
" on the March	19

	PAGE
<i>Ordered Arms—</i>	
To be trailed as the men step off	6
<i>Outer flank</i>	2
<i>Paces—</i>	
Length of marching	1
Number taken in a minute	<i>ib.</i>
To calculate for Files	<i>ib.</i>
<i>Passing by Fours—</i>	
From the flanks of Companies	77—80
<i>Pivot—</i>	
“Pivot flank” in Column	2, 82
<i>Pivot man</i>	6
<i>Pivots—</i>	
Fixed and Moveable, wheeling on	22
Moveable, wheeling on from the Halt	24
<i>Platoon Exercise</i>	222
<i>Point of Appui. (See Appui.)</i>	
<i>Points—</i>	
How aides face in giving	60
How Coverers face in giving	197, 198
Of formation	65
<i>Points intermediate—</i>	
By whom given	65
To be kept clear	66
<i>Position, Changes of—</i>	
By Echellon	161
By Open Column	149
<i>Posting—</i>	
Of Colours	60
Of Officers and Covering-serjeant, in Company	8
” in Battalion	60
<i>Proving a Company</i>	13
<i>Quarter-distance Column—</i>	
Distance between Companies in	82
Formation of Square from	172
How Officers cover in	84
Opening out a	112
Wheel of a	115
<i>Rallying Square.</i>	57

INDEX.

241

	PAGE
<i>Ranks—</i>	
Distance of, in Open and Close order	8
Opening and Closing	15
" " on the March	19
<i>Rear Guard—</i>	
Posting of Officers, with a	226
To send out a	227
<i>Relieving Guard</i>	228
<i>Review or Inspection</i>	187—196
<i>Saluting—</i>	
In Line	187
In Marching past	189
<i>Sections—</i>	
Echelon of	35
Formation of from Subdivisions	48
How commanded	9
<i>Serjeants. (See Covering-serjeants.)</i>	
<i>Side-step—</i>	
A single Company closing by the	43
Companies in Battalion closing by the	63
Length of the	1
<i>Sized—</i>	
How a Company is	7
<i>Squares—</i>	
Baggage	183
Company	55, 180
Echelon of	181
Formation of from Column	170
" " while taking ground to a flank	77, 172
" from Line	177
Four-deep	170—174
Rallying	57
Re-forming Column, from a 4-deep	175
Re-forming Line, from a 4-deep	178
" a 2-deep	185
<i>Square—</i>	
Resisting Cavalry	55, 57
To move a	174, 185
Two-deep	183
<i>Squads—</i>	
In a Company, under whose superintendence	11
<i>Standing at Ease—</i>	
Officers' swords, at Open order	16
<i>Stepping out, and short—</i>	
Length of pace in	1

	PAGE
<i>Subdivisions, Column of—</i>	
Breaking off files from an Open	52
Directing flank in a Double	82
Formation of from Company	47
„ from File-marching	39
„ from Sections	49
How commanded	9
Wheeling into Line from	33
<i>Supernumerary Officers—</i>	
How they change flanks	10
Posting of	8, 9
<i>Supernumerary Rank—</i>	
Its distance from the rear rank, and its use	8
<i>Supernumerary Serjeant</i>	9
<i>Sword-bayonet—</i>	
Weight and length of	231
<i>Swords, Officers'—</i>	
How carried, &c.	2, 227
<i>Turning—</i>	
With which foot made	39
<i>Two-deep—</i>	
How re-formed from Four-deep	42
To form Four-deep from	39, 41
<i>Volley firing</i>	64, 222
<i>Wheeling—</i>	
A Close or Quarter-distance Column	115
A Company any number of paces, from the Halt	26
From Echellon into Line	158
From Line into Column	85
Into Echellon from Line	155
Into Line from Column	128
On a halted and moveable pivot	22
On moveable pivots from the Halt	24
On the centre of a Company	28
The Quarter-circle	4
<i>Wings—</i>	
A Column changing	121, 123
Advancing and retiring, by	74, 75
<i>Words of Command—</i>	
How given	3

WORKS BY CAPT. MALTON.

COMPANY AND BATTALION DRILL ILLUSTRATED.

In accordance with the FIELD EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF INFANTRY. *Fourth Edition. With 60 Plates. In Cloth, 10s.; post-free, 10s. 6d.*

SINNOTT'S MILITARY CATECHISM: adapted to the revised system of the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. *Thirteenth Edition. 1860. In Cloth, 3s.; post-free, 3s. 4d.*

LIGHT DRILL: in accordance with the FIELD EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF INFANTRY. 1860. *With 8 Plates, and the Bugle Sounds. In Cloth, 2s. 6d.; post-free, 2s. 8d.*

THE DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS in Company and Battalion Drill, in accordance with the revised Field Exercise. *Second Edition. In Cloth, 1s. 6d.; post-free, 1s. 7d.*

THE ABC OF SKIRMISHING: being the Light Infantry Movements of a Company; in accordance with the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. *Second Edition. With 2 Plates, and the Bugle Sounds. In Cloth, 1s.; post-free, 1s. 1d.*

COMPANY MANŒUVRES: or, Suggestions for Company Drill on the System laid down in the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. *In Cloth, 1s.; post free, 1s. 1d.*

PUBLISHED BY

W. CLOWES AND SONS, 14, CHARING CROSS, LONDON.

